



## Common Security Advisory Framework Version 2.1

### Committee Specification Draft 01

28 May 2025

#### This stage:

<https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/csaf-v2.1-csd01.md> (Authoritative)

<https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/csaf-v2.1-csd01.html>

<https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/csaf-v2.1-csd01.pdf>

#### Previous stage:

N/A

#### Latest stage:

<https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf-v2.1.md> (Authoritative)

<https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf-v2.1.html>

<https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf-v2.1.pdf>

#### Technical Committee:

OASIS Common Security Advisory Framework (CSAF) TC

#### Chair:

Justin Murphy ([justin.murphy@mail.cisa.dhs.gov](mailto:justin.murphy@mail.cisa.dhs.gov)), DHS Cybersecurity and Infrastructure Security Agency

Omar Santos ([osantos@cisco.com](mailto:osantos@cisco.com)), Cisco Systems

Stefan Hagen ([stefan@hagen.link](mailto:stefan@hagen.link)), Individual

#### Editors:

Stefan Hagen ([stefan@hagen.link](mailto:stefan@hagen.link)), Individual

Thomas Schmidt ([thomas.schmidt@bsi.bund.de](mailto:thomas.schmidt@bsi.bund.de)), Federal Office for Information Security (BSI) Germany

#### Additional artifacts:

This prose specification is one component of a Work Product that also includes:

- Aggregator JSON schema:  
[https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/schemas/aggregator\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/schemas/aggregator_json_schema.json).  
Latest stage: [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/aggregator\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/aggregator_json_schema.json).
- CSAF JSON schema: [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/schemas/csaf\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/schemas/csaf_json_schema.json).  
Latest stage: [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf_json_schema.json).
- Provider JSON schema: [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/schemas/provider\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/schemas/provider_json_schema.json).  
Latest stage: [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/provider\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/provider_json_schema.json).

## Related work:

This specification replaces or supersedes:

- *Common Security Advisory Framework Version 2.0*. Edited by Langley Rock, Stefan Hagen, and Thomas Schmidt. 18 November 2022. OASIS Standard. <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.0/os/csaf-v2.0-os.html>. Latest stage: <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.0/csaf-v2.0.html>.

## Declared JSON namespaces:

- [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/aggregator\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/aggregator_json_schema.json)
- [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf_json_schema.json)
- [https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/provider\\_json\\_schema.json](https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/provider_json_schema.json)

## Abstract:

The Common Security Advisory Framework (CSAF) Version 2.1 is the definitive reference for the language which supports creation, update, and interoperable exchange of security advisories as structured information on products, vulnerabilities and the status of impact and remediation among interested parties.

## Status:

This document was last revised or approved by the membership of OASIS on the above date. The level of approval is also listed above. Check the “Latest stage” location noted above for possible later revisions of this document. Any other numbered Versions and other technical work produced by the Technical Committee (TC) are listed at [https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/tc\\_home.php?wg\\_abbrev=csaf#technical](https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/tc_home.php?wg_abbrev=csaf#technical).

TC members should send comments on this specification to the TC’s email list. Others should send comments to the TC’s public comment list, after subscribing to it by following the instructions at the “Send A Comment” button on the TC’s web page at <https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/csaf/>.

This specification is provided under the [Non-Assertion](#) Mode of the [OASIS IPR Policy](#), the mode chosen when the Technical Committee was established. For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the Intellectual Property Rights section of the TC’s web page (<https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/csaf/ipr.php>).

Note that any machine-readable content ([Computer Language Definitions](#)) declared Normative for this Work Product is provided in separate plain text files. In the event of a discrepancy between any such plain text file and display content in the Work Product’s prose narrative document(s), the content in the separate plain text file prevails.

## Key words:

The key words “MUST”, “MUST NOT”, “REQUIRED”, “SHALL”, “SHALL NOT”, “SHOULD”, “SHOULD NOT”, “RECOMMENDED”, “NOT RECOMMENDED”, “MAY”, and “OPTIONAL” in this document are to be interpreted as described in BCP 14 [RFC2119] and [RFC8174] when, and only when, they appear in all capitals, as shown here.

## Citation format:

When referencing this specification the following citation format should be used:

**[csaf-v2.1]**

*Common Security Advisory Framework Version 2.1*. Edited by Stefan Hagen, and Thomas Schmidt. 28 May 2025. OASIS Committee Specification Draft 01. <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csd01/csaf-v2.1-csd01.html>. Latest stage: <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/csaf-v2.1.html>.

## Notices

Copyright 2024. All Rights Reserved.

Distributed under the terms of the OASIS [IPR Policy](#).

The name “OASIS” is a trademark of [OASIS](#), the owner and developer of this specification, and should be used only to refer to the organization and its official outputs.

For complete copyright information please see the full Notices section in an Appendix below.

## Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>11</b>
1.1	IPR Policy . . . . .	11
1.2	Terminology . . . . .	11
1.3	Normative References . . . . .	13
1.4	Informative References . . . . .	14
1.5	Typographical Conventions . . . . .	16
<b>2</b>	<b>Design Considerations</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1	Construction Principles . . . . .	17
2.2	Format Validation . . . . .	18
2.3	Date and Time . . . . .	19
<b>3</b>	<b>Schema Elements</b>	<b>20</b>
3.1	Definitions . . . . .	20
3.1.1	Acknowledgments Type . . . . .	21
3.1.1.1	Acknowledgments Type - Names . . . . .	21
3.1.1.2	Acknowledgments Type - Organization . . . . .	22
3.1.1.3	Acknowledgments Type - Summary . . . . .	22
3.1.1.4	Acknowledgments Type - URLs . . . . .	22
3.1.1.5	Acknowledgments Type - Example . . . . .	22
3.1.2	Branches Type . . . . .	23
3.1.2.1	Branches Type - Branches . . . . .	24
3.1.2.2	Branches Type - Category . . . . .	24
3.1.2.3	Branches Type - Name . . . . .	25
3.1.2.4	Branches Type - Product . . . . .	26
3.1.3	Full Product Name Type . . . . .	26
3.1.3.1	Full Product Name Type - Name . . . . .	27
3.1.3.2	Full Product Name Type - Product ID . . . . .	27
3.1.3.3	Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper . . . . .	27
3.1.4	Language Type . . . . .	34
3.1.5	Notes Type . . . . .	34
3.1.6	Product Group ID Type . . . . .	36
3.1.7	Product Groups Type . . . . .	37
3.1.8	Product ID Type . . . . .	37
3.1.9	Products Type . . . . .	37
3.1.10	References Type . . . . .	38
3.1.11	Version Type . . . . .	39
3.1.11.1	Version Type - Integer versioning . . . . .	39
3.1.11.2	Version Type - Semantic versioning . . . . .	40
3.2	Properties . . . . .	42
3.2.1	Schema Property . . . . .	42
3.2.2	Document Property . . . . .	42
3.2.2.1	Document Property - Acknowledgments . . . . .	43
3.2.2.2	Document Property - Aggregate Severity . . . . .	43
3.2.2.3	Document Property - Category . . . . .	44
3.2.2.4	Document Property - CSAF Version . . . . .	44
3.2.2.5	Document Property - Distribution . . . . .	45
3.2.2.6	Document Property - Language . . . . .	47
3.2.2.7	Document Property - License Expression . . . . .	48
3.2.2.8	Document Property - Notes . . . . .	48

3.2.2.9	Document Property - Publisher . . . . .	49
3.2.2.10	Document Property - References . . . . .	51
3.2.2.11	Document Property - Source Language . . . . .	51
3.2.2.12	Document Property - Title . . . . .	51
3.2.2.13	Document Property - Tracking . . . . .	52
3.2.3	Product Tree Property . . . . .	56
3.2.3.1	Product Tree Property - Branches . . . . .	56
3.2.3.2	Product Tree Property - Full Product Names . . . . .	57
3.2.3.3	Product Tree Property - Product Groups . . . . .	57
3.2.3.4	Product Tree Property - Relationships . . . . .	58
3.2.4	Vulnerabilities Property . . . . .	60
3.2.4.1	Vulnerabilities Property - Acknowledgments . . . . .	61
3.2.4.2	Vulnerabilities Property - CVE . . . . .	61
3.2.4.3	Vulnerabilities Property - CWEs . . . . .	61
3.2.4.4	Vulnerabilities Property - Disclosure Date . . . . .	63
3.2.4.5	Vulnerabilities Property - Discovery Date . . . . .	63
3.2.4.6	Vulnerabilities Property - First Known Exploitation Dates . . . . .	63
3.2.4.7	Vulnerabilities Property - Flags . . . . .	64
3.2.4.8	Vulnerabilities Property - IDs . . . . .	65
3.2.4.9	Vulnerabilities Property - Involvements . . . . .	66
3.2.4.10	Vulnerabilities Property - Metrics . . . . .	68
3.2.4.11	Vulnerabilities Property - Notes . . . . .	70
3.2.4.12	Vulnerabilities Property - Product Status . . . . .	71
3.2.4.13	Vulnerabilities Property - References . . . . .	73
3.2.4.14	Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations . . . . .	73
3.2.4.15	Vulnerabilities Property - Threats . . . . .	77
3.2.4.16	Vulnerabilities Property - Title . . . . .	78
<b>4</b>	<b>Profiles</b>	<b>79</b>
4.1	Profile 1: CSAF Base . . . . .	79
4.2	Profile 2: Security incident response . . . . .	80
4.3	Profile 3: Informational Advisory . . . . .	80
4.4	Profile 4: Security Advisory . . . . .	81
4.5	Profile 5: VEX . . . . .	81
4.6	Profile 6: Deprecated Security Advisory . . . . .	82
4.7	Profile 7: Withdrawn . . . . .	82
4.8	Profile 8: Superseded . . . . .	83
<b>5</b>	<b>Additional Conventions</b>	<b>84</b>
5.1	Filename . . . . .	84
5.2	Separation in Data Stream . . . . .	84
5.3	Sorting . . . . .	84
5.4	Usage of Markdown . . . . .	85
5.5	Branch recursion . . . . .	85
5.6	Hardware and Software within the Product Tree . . . . .	85
<b>6</b>	<b>Tests</b>	<b>88</b>
6.1	Mandatory Tests . . . . .	88
6.1.1	Missing Definition of Product ID . . . . .	88
6.1.2	Multiple Definition of Product ID . . . . .	89
6.1.3	Circular Definition of Product ID . . . . .	89

6.1.4	Missing Definition of Product Group ID . . . . .	90
6.1.5	Multiple Definition of Product Group ID . . . . .	91
6.1.6	Contradicting Product Status . . . . .	92
6.1.7	Multiple Scores with same Version per Product . . . . .	92
6.1.8	Invalid CVSS . . . . .	93
6.1.9	Invalid CVSS computation . . . . .	94
6.1.10	Inconsistent CVSS . . . . .	95
6.1.11	CWE . . . . .	95
6.1.12	Language . . . . .	96
6.1.13	PURL . . . . .	96
6.1.14	Sorted Revision History . . . . .	97
6.1.15	Translator . . . . .	97
6.1.16	Latest Document Version . . . . .	98
6.1.17	Document Status Draft . . . . .	98
6.1.18	Released Revision History . . . . .	99
6.1.19	Revision History Entries for Pre-release Versions . . . . .	99
6.1.20	Non-draft Document Version . . . . .	100
6.1.21	Missing Item in Revision History . . . . .	100
6.1.22	Multiple Definition in Revision History . . . . .	101
6.1.23	Multiple Use of Same CVE . . . . .	101
6.1.24	Multiple Definition in Involvements . . . . .	102
6.1.25	Multiple Use of Same Hash Algorithm . . . . .	102
6.1.26	Prohibited Document Category Name . . . . .	103
6.1.27	Profile Tests . . . . .	104
6.1.27.1	Document Notes . . . . .	104
6.1.27.2	Document References . . . . .	105
6.1.27.3	Vulnerabilities . . . . .	105
6.1.27.4	Product Tree . . . . .	106
6.1.27.5	Vulnerability Notes . . . . .	106
6.1.27.6	Product Status . . . . .	107
6.1.27.7	VEX Product Status . . . . .	107
6.1.27.8	Vulnerability ID . . . . .	108
6.1.27.9	Impact Statement . . . . .	108
6.1.27.10	Action Statement . . . . .	110
6.1.27.11	Vulnerabilities . . . . .	111
6.1.27.12	Affected Products . . . . .	111
6.1.27.13	Corresponding Affected Products . . . . .	112
6.1.27.14	Document Notes . . . . .	113
6.1.27.15	Product Tree . . . . .	114
6.1.27.16	Revision History . . . . .	114
6.1.27.17	Reasoning for Withdrawal . . . . .	115
6.1.27.18	Reasoning for Supersession . . . . .	115
6.1.27.19	Reference to Superseding Document . . . . .	116
6.1.28	Translation . . . . .	116
6.1.29	Remediation without Product Reference . . . . .	117
6.1.30	Mixed Integer and Semantic Versioning . . . . .	117
6.1.31	Version Range in Product Version . . . . .	118
6.1.32	Flag without Product Reference . . . . .	118
6.1.33	Multiple Flags with VEX Justification Codes per Product . . . . .	119
6.1.34	Branches Recursion Depth . . . . .	120
6.1.35	Contradicting Remediations . . . . .	124
6.1.36	Contradicting Product Status Remediation Combination . . . . .	125
6.1.37	Date and Time . . . . .	125

6.1.38	Non-Public Sharing Group with Max UUID . . . . .	126
6.1.39	Public Sharing Group with no Max UUID . . . . .	126
6.1.40	Invalid Sharing Group Name . . . . .	127
6.1.41	Missing Sharing Group Name . . . . .	127
6.1.42	PURL Qualifiers . . . . .	128
6.1.43	Use of Multiple Stars in Model Number . . . . .	128
6.1.44	Use of Multiple Stars in Serial Number . . . . .	129
6.1.45	Inconsistent Disclosure Date . . . . .	129
6.1.46	Invalid SSVC . . . . .	130
6.1.47	Inconsistent SSVC ID . . . . .	130
6.1.48	SSVC Decision Points . . . . .	131
6.1.49	Inconsistent SSVC Timestamp . . . . .	132
6.1.50	Product Version Range Rules . . . . .	133
6.1.51	Inconsistent EPSS Timestamp . . . . .	134
6.1.52	Inconsistent First Known Exploitation Dates . . . . .	135
6.1.53	Inconsistent Exploitation Date . . . . .	136
6.1.54	License Expression . . . . .	136
6.1.55	License Text . . . . .	137
6.2	Recommended Tests . . . . .	137
6.2.1	Unused Definition of Product ID . . . . .	137
6.2.2	Missing Remediation . . . . .	138
6.2.3	Missing Metric . . . . .	139
6.2.4	Build Metadata in Revision History . . . . .	139
6.2.5	Older Initial Release Date than Revision History . . . . .	140
6.2.6	Older Current Release Date than Revision History . . . . .	140
6.2.7	Missing Date in Involvements . . . . .	141
6.2.8	Use of MD5 as the only Hash Algorithm . . . . .	141
6.2.9	Use of SHA-1 as the only Hash Algorithm . . . . .	142
6.2.10	Missing TLP label (obsolete) . . . . .	143
6.2.11	Missing Canonical URL . . . . .	143
6.2.12	Missing Document Language . . . . .	144
6.2.13	Sorting . . . . .	144
6.2.14	Use of Private Language . . . . .	145
6.2.15	Use of Default Language . . . . .	145
6.2.16	Missing Product Identification Helper . . . . .	146
6.2.17	CVE in field IDs . . . . .	146
6.2.18	Product Version Range without vers . . . . .	146
6.2.19	CVSS for Fixed Products . . . . .	147
6.2.20	Additional Properties . . . . .	148
6.2.21	Same Timestamps in Revision History . . . . .	149
6.2.22	Document Tracking ID in Title . . . . .	149
6.2.23	Usage of Deprecated CWE . . . . .	150
6.2.24	Usage of Non-Latest CWE Version . . . . .	150
6.2.25	Usage of CWE Not Allowed for Vulnerability Mapping . . . . .	151
6.2.26	Usage of CWE Allowed with Review for Vulnerability Mapping . . . . .	151
6.2.27	Discouraged Product Status Remediation Combination . . . . .	152
6.2.28	Usage of Max UUID . . . . .	152
6.2.29	Usage of Nil UUID . . . . .	153
6.2.30	Usage of Sharing Group on TLP:CLEAR . . . . .	153
6.2.31	Hardware and Software . . . . .	154
6.2.32	Use of same Product Identification Helper for different Products . . . . .	155
6.2.33	Disclosure Date newer than Revision History . . . . .	156

6.2.34	Usage of Unregistered SSVS Decision Point Namespace . . . . .	157
6.2.35	Usage of Private SSVS Decision Point Namespace in TLP:CLEAR Document . . . . .	158
6.2.36	Usage of SSVS Decision Point Namespace with Extension in TLP:CLEAR Document . . . . .	159
6.2.37	Usage of Unknown SSVS Role . . . . .	160
6.2.38	Usage of Deprecated Profile . . . . .	160
6.2.39	Profile Tests . . . . .	161
6.2.39.1	Missing Fixed Product . . . . .	161
6.2.39.2	Language Specific Reasoning for Withdrawal . . . . .	162
6.2.39.3	Language Specific Reasoning for Supersession . . . . .	162
6.2.39.4	Language Specific Superseding Document . . . . .	163
6.2.40	Product Description without Product Reference . . . . .	164
6.2.41	Old EPSS Timestamp . . . . .	164
6.2.42	Inconsistent Product Identification Helper . . . . .	165
6.2.43	Missing License Expression . . . . .	166
6.2.44	Deprecated License Identifier . . . . .	167
6.2.45	Non-Existing License Identifier . . . . .	167
6.2.46	Language Specific License Text . . . . .	168
6.3	Informative Tests . . . . .	168
6.3.1	Use of CVSS v2 as the only Scoring System . . . . .	168
6.3.2	Use of CVSS v3.0 . . . . .	169
6.3.3	Missing CVE . . . . .	170
6.3.4	Missing CWE . . . . .	170
6.3.5	Use of Short Hash . . . . .	171
6.3.6	Use of non-self referencing URLs Failing to Resolve . . . . .	171
6.3.7	Use of self referencing URLs Failing to Resolve . . . . .	172
6.3.8	Spell Check . . . . .	173
6.3.9	Branch Categories . . . . .	174
6.3.10	Usage of Product Version Range . . . . .	175
6.3.11	Usage of V as Version Indicator . . . . .	175
6.3.12	Missing CVSS v4.0 . . . . .	176
6.3.13	Usage of Non-Latest SSVS Decision Point Version . . . . .	176
6.3.14	Usage of Private SSVS Decision Point Namespace in non TLP:CLEAR Document . . . . .	177
6.3.15	Usage of SSVS Decision Point Namespace with Extension in non TLP:CLEAR Document . . . . .	178
6.3.16	Grammar Check . . . . .	179
6.3.17	Use of Unregistered License . . . . .	180
6.4	Presets . . . . .	181
6.4.1	Presets defined through Test Subsections . . . . .	181
6.4.2	Presets defined through Conformance Targets . . . . .	181
6.4.3	Additional Presets . . . . .	181
<b>7</b>	<b>Distributing CSAF documents</b>	<b>183</b>
7.1	Requirements . . . . .	183
7.1.1	Requirement 1: Valid CSAF document . . . . .	183
7.1.2	Requirement 2: Filename . . . . .	183
7.1.3	Requirement 3: TLS . . . . .	183
7.1.4	Requirement 4: TLP:CLEAR . . . . .	183
7.1.5	Requirement 5: TLP:AMBER, TLP:AMBER+STRICT and TLP:RED . . . . .	183
7.1.6	Requirement 6: No Redirects . . . . .	183
7.1.7	Requirement 7: provider-metadata.json . . . . .	184
7.1.8	Requirement 8: security.txt . . . . .	185
7.1.9	Requirement 9: Well-known URL for provider-metadata.json . . . . .	186
7.1.10	Requirement 10: DNS path . . . . .	186



7.1.11	Requirement 11: One folder per year . . . . .	186
7.1.12	Requirement 12: index.txt . . . . .	186
7.1.13	Requirement 13: changes.csv . . . . .	187
7.1.14	Requirement 14: Directory listings . . . . .	187
7.1.15	Requirement 15: ROLIE feed . . . . .	187
7.1.16	Requirement 16: ROLIE service document . . . . .	188
7.1.17	Requirement 17: ROLIE category document . . . . .	189
7.1.18	Requirement 18: Integrity . . . . .	190
7.1.19	Requirement 19: Signatures . . . . .	191
7.1.20	Requirement 20: Public OpenPGP Key . . . . .	191
7.1.21	Requirement 21: List of CSAF providers . . . . .	191
7.1.22	Requirement 22: Two disjoint issuing parties . . . . .	192
7.1.23	Requirement 23: Mirror . . . . .	192
7.1.24	Requirement 24: HTTP User-Agent . . . . .	194
7.1.25	Requirement 25: Access-Control-Allow-Origin . . . . .	194
7.2	Roles . . . . .	194
7.2.1	Role: CSAF publisher . . . . .	194
7.2.2	Role: CSAF provider . . . . .	195
7.2.3	Role: CSAF trusted provider . . . . .	195
7.2.4	Role: CSAF lister . . . . .	195
7.2.5	Role: CSAF aggregator . . . . .	195
7.3	Retrieving rules . . . . .	196
7.3.1	Finding provider-metadata.json . . . . .	196
7.3.2	Retrieving CSAF documents . . . . .	196
7.4	Transition between CSAF 2.0 and CSAF 2.1 . . . . .	197
7.4.1	Announcing the Transition . . . . .	197
7.4.2	Transition Process for a CSAF Provider . . . . .	197
7.4.3	Archive of CSAF Document from Previous Version . . . . .	198
7.4.4	Transition Process for a CSAF Aggregator . . . . .	198
<b>8</b>	<b>Safety, Security, and Data Protection Considerations</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Conformance</b>	<b>200</b>
9.1	Conformance Targets . . . . .	200
9.1.1	Conformance Clause 1: CSAF document . . . . .	201
9.1.2	Conformance Clause 2: CSAF producer . . . . .	201
9.1.3	Conformance Clause 3: CSAF direct producer . . . . .	201
9.1.4	Conformance Clause 4: CSAF converter . . . . .	201
9.1.5	Conformance Clause 5: CVRF CSAF converter . . . . .	202
9.1.6	Conformance Clause 6: CSAF content management system . . . . .	205
9.1.7	Conformance Clause 7: CSAF post-processor . . . . .	207
9.1.8	Conformance Clause 8: CSAF modifier . . . . .	207
9.1.9	Conformance Clause 9: CSAF translator . . . . .	208
9.1.10	Conformance Clause 10: CSAF consumer . . . . .	208
9.1.11	Conformance Clause 11: CSAF viewer . . . . .	209
9.1.12	Conformance Clause 12: CSAF management system . . . . .	209
9.1.13	Conformance Clause 13: CSAF asset matching system . . . . .	209
9.1.14	Conformance Clause 14: CSAF basic validator . . . . .	210
9.1.15	Conformance Clause 15: CSAF extended validator . . . . .	210
9.1.16	Conformance Clause 16: CSAF full validator . . . . .	210
9.1.17	Conformance Clause 17: CSAF SBOM matching system . . . . .	211
9.1.18	Conformance Clause 18: CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter . . . . .	211
9.1.19	Conformance Clause 19: CSAF library . . . . .	215

9.1.20	Conformance Clause 20: CSAF library with basic validation . . . . .	216
9.1.21	Conformance Clause 21: CSAF library with extended validation . . . . .	216
9.1.22	Conformance Clause 22: CSAF library with full validation . . . . .	216
9.1.23	Conformance Clause 23: CSAF downloader . . . . .	217
9.1.24	Conformance Clause 24: CSAF withdrawer . . . . .	217
9.1.25	Conformance Clause 25: CSAF superseder . . . . .	217
<b>Appendix A. Acknowledgments</b>		<b>218</b>
<b>Appendix B. Revision History</b>		<b>221</b>
<b>Appendix C. Guidance on the Size of CSAF Documents</b>		<b>222</b>
C.1	File Size . . . . .	222
C.2	Array Length . . . . .	222
C.3	String Length . . . . .	224
C.4	Date . . . . .	226
C.5	Enum . . . . .	227
C.6	URI Length . . . . .	229
C.7	UUID Length . . . . .	229

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 IPR Policy

This specification is provided under the [Non-Assertion](#) Mode of the [OASIS IPR Policy](#), the mode chosen when the Technical Committee was established. For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the Intellectual Property Rights section of the TC's web page (<https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/csaf/ipr.php>).

## 1.2 Terminology

The key words “MUST”, “MUST NOT”, “REQUIRED”, “SHALL”, “SHALL NOT”, “SHOULD”, “SHOULD NOT”, “RECOMMENDED”, “NOT RECOMMENDED”, “MAY”, and “OPTIONAL” in this document are to be interpreted as described in BCP 14 [RFC2119] and [RFC8174] when, and only when, they appear in all capitals, as shown here.

For purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply:

**advisory** reporting item that describes a condition present in an artifact and that requires action by the consumers

**advisory document** artifact in which an analysis tool reports a result

**advisory management system** software system that consumes the documents produced by analysis tools, produces advisories that enable engineering and operating organizations to assess the quality of these software artifacts at a point in time, and performs functions such as filing security advisories and displaying information about individual advisories. **Note:** An advisory management system can interact with a document viewer to display information about individual advisories.

**advisory matching** process of determining whether two advisories are targeting the same products and conditions

**artifact** sequence of bytes addressable via a URI. *Examples:* A physical file in a file system such as a source file, an object file, a configuration file or a data file; a specific version of a file in a version control system; a database table accessed via an HTTP request; an arbitrary stream of bytes returned from an HTTP request, a product URL, a common product enumeration value.

**CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter** A CSAF producer which takes a CSAF 2.0 document as input and converts it into a valid CSAF 2.1 document.

**CSAF asset matching system** program that connects to or is an asset database and is able to manage CSAF documents as required by CSAF management system as well as matching them to assets of the asset database.

**CSAF basic validator** A program that reads a document and checks it against the JSON schema and performs mandatory tests.

**CSAF consumer** program that reads and interprets a CSAF document

**CSAF content management system** program that is able to create, review and manage CSAF documents and is able to preview their details as required by CSAF viewer.

**CSAF converter** CSAF producer that transforms the output of an analysis tool from its native output format into the CSAF format

**CSAF direct producer** analysis tool which acts as a CSAF producer

**CSAF document** security advisory text document in the format defined by this document.

**CSAF downloader** A program that retrieves CSAF documents in an automated fashion.

**CSAF extended validator** A CSAF basic validator that additionally performs recommended tests.

**CSAF full validator** A CSAF extended validator that additionally performs informative tests.

**CSAF library** A library that implements CSAF data capabilities.

**CSAF library with basic validation** A CSAF library that also satisfies the conformance target “CSAF basic validator”.

**CSAF library with extended validation** A CSAF library that also satisfies the conformance target “CSAF extended validator”.

**CSAF library with full validation** A CSAF library that also satisfies the conformance target “CSAF full validator”.

**CSAF management system** program that is able to manage CSAF documents and is able to display their details as required by CSAF viewer.

**CSAF modifier** CSAF post-processor which takes a CSAF document as input and modifies the structure or values of properties. The output is a valid CSAF document.

**CSAF post-processor** CSAF producer that transforms an existing CSAF document into a new CSAF document, for example, by removing or redacting elements according to sharing policies.

**CSAF SBOM matching system** A program that connects to or is an SBOM database and is able to manage CSAF documents as required by CSAF management system as well as matching them to SBOM components of the SBOM database.

**CSAF producer** program that emits output in the CSAF format

**CSAF superseder** A CSAF post-processor that transforms a given CSAF into a superseded one.

**CSAF translator** CSAF post-processor which takes a CSAF document as input and translates values of properties into another language. The output is a valid CSAF document.

**CSAF viewer** CSAF consumer that reads a CSAF document, displays a list of the results it contains, and allows an end user to view each result in the context of the artifact in which it occurs.

**CSAF withdrawer** A CSAF post-processor that transforms a given CSAF into a withdrawn one.

**CVRF CSAF converter** CSAF producer which takes a CVRF document as input and converts it into a valid CSAF document.

**document** output file produced by an analysis tool, which enumerates the results produced by the tool

**driver** tool component containing an analysis tool's or converter's primary executable, which controls the tool's or converter's execution, and which in the case of an analysis tool typically defines a set of analysis rules

**embedded link** syntactic construct which enables a message string to refer to a location mentioned in the document

**empty array** array that contains no elements, and so has a length of 0

**empty object** object that contains no properties

**empty string** string that contains no characters, and so has a length of 0

**(end) user** person who uses the information in a document to investigate, triage, or resolve results

**engineering system** software analysis environment within which analysis tools execute. **Note:** An engineering system might include a build system, a source control system, a result management system, a bug tracking system, a test execution system, and so on.

**extension** tool component other than the driver (for example, a plugin, a configuration file, or a taxonomy)

**external property file** file containing the values of one or more externalized properties

**externalizable property** property that can be contained in an external property file

**externalized property** property stored outside of the CSAF document to which it logically belongs

**false positive** result which an end user decides does not actually represent a problem

**filter** refine a list by selecting entries that match given criteria

**fingerprint** stable value that can be used by a result management system to uniquely identify a result over time, even if a relevant artifact is modified

**formatted message** message string which contains formatting information such as Markdown formatting characters

**fully qualified logical name** string that fully identifies the programmatic construct specified by a logical location, typically by means of a hierarchical identifier.

**hierarchical string** string in the format <component>{/<component>}\*

**line** contiguous sequence of characters, starting either at the beginning of an artifact or immediately after a newline sequence, and ending at and including the nearest subsequent newline sequence, if one is present, or else extending to the end of the artifact

**line (number)** 1-based index of a line within a file. **Note:** Abbreviated to "line" when there is no danger of ambiguity with "line" in the sense of a sequence of characters.

**localizable** subject to being translated from one natural language to another

**message string** human-readable string that conveys information relevant to an element in a CSAF document

**nested artifact** artifact that is contained within another artifact

**newline sequence** sequence of one or more characters representing the end of a line of text. **Note:** Some systems represent a newline sequence with a single newline character; others represent it as a carriage return character followed by a newline character.

**notification** reporting item that describes a condition encountered by a tool during its execution

**opaque** neither human-readable nor machine-parsable into constituent parts

**parent (artifact)** artifact which contains one or more nested artifacts

**plain text message** message string which does not contain any formatting information

**plugin** tool component that defines additional rules

**policy** set of rule configurations that specify how results that violate the rules defined by a particular tool component are

to be treated

**problem** result which indicates a condition that has the potential to detract from the quality of the program. *Examples:* A security vulnerability, a deviation from contractual or legal requirements.

**product** is any deliverable (e.g. software, hardware, specification, or service) which can be referred to with a name. This applies regardless of the origin, the license model, or the mode of distribution of the deliverable.

**property** attribute of an object consisting of a name and a value associated with the name

**redactable property** property that potentially contains sensitive information that a CSAF direct producer or a CSAF post-processor might wish to redact

**reporting item** unit of output produced by a tool, either a result or a notification

**reporting configuration** the subset of reporting metadata that a tool can configure at runtime, before performing its scan. *Examples:* severity level, rank

**repository** container for a related set of files in a version control system

**search** compile a list of entries that match given criteria

**taxonomy** classification of analysis results into a set of categories

**tag** string that conveys additional information about the CSAF document element to which it applies

**text artifact** artifact considered as a sequence of characters organized into lines and columns

**text region** region representing a contiguous range of zero or more characters in a text artifact

**tool component** component of an analysis tool or converter, either its driver or an extension, consisting of one or more files

**top-level artifact** artifact which is not contained within any other artifact

**translation** rendering of a tool component's localizable strings into another language

**triage** decide whether a result indicates a problem that needs to be corrected

**user** see end user.

**VCS** version control system

**vendor** the community, individual, or organization that created or maintains a product (including open source software and hardware providers)

**VEX** Vulnerability Exploitability eXchange - enables a supplier or other party to assert whether or not a particular product is affected by a specific vulnerability, especially helpful in efficiently consuming SBOM data.

**viewer** see CSAF viewer.

**vulnerability** functional behavior of a product or service that violates an implicit or explicit security policy (conforming to ISO/IEC 29147 [ISO29147])

**white space** code point used to improve text readability or token separation as defined in section 12.2 of [ECMA-262]

**XML** eXtensible Markup Language - the format used by the predecessors of this standard, namely CVRF 1.1 and CVRF 1.2.

### 1.3 Normative References

[ECMA-262] *ECMAScript® 2024 Language Specification*, ECMA-262, 15th edition, June 2024, <https://262.ecma-international.org/15.0/>

[ISO8601-1] *Date and time — Representations for information interchangePart 1: Basic rules*, International Standard, ISO 8601-1:2019(E), February 25, 2019, <https://www.iso.org/standard/70907.html>.

[JSON-Schema-Core] *JSON Schema: A Media Type for Describing JSON Documents*, draft-bhutton-json-schema-00, December 2020, <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/draft-bhutton-json-schema-00>.

[JSON-Schema-Validation] *JSON Schema Validation: A Vocabulary for Structural Validation of JSON*, draft-bhutton-json-schema-validation-00, December 2020, <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/draft-bhutton-json-schema-validation-00>.

[JSON-Hyper-Schema] *JSON Hyper-Schema: A Vocabulary for Hypermedia Annotation of JSON*, draft-handrews-json-schema-hyperschema-02, September 2019, <https://json-schema.org/draft/2019-09/json-schema-hypermedia.html>.

[Relative-JSON-Pointers] *Relative JSON Pointers*, draft-bhutton-relative-json-pointer-00, December 2020, <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/draft-bhutton-relative-json-pointer-00>.

- [**RFC2119**] Bradner, S., “Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels”, BCP 14, RFC 2119, DOI 10.17487/RFC2119, March 1997, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc2119>.
- [**RFC3339**] Klyne, G. and C. Newman, “Date and Time on the Internet: Timestamps”, RFC 3339, DOI 10.17487/RFC3339, July 2002, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc3339>.
- [**RFC4180**] Shafranovich, Y., “Common Format and MIME Type for Comma-Separated Values (CSV) Files”, RFC 4180, DOI 10.17487/RFC4180, October 2005, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc4180>.
- [**RFC7230**] Roy T. Fielding and Julian Reschke, “Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Message Syntax and Routing”, RFC 7230, DOI 10.17487/RFC7230, June 2014, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc7230>.
- [**RFC7464**] Williams, N., “JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) Text Sequences”, RFC 7464, DOI 10.17487/RFC7464, February 2015, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc7464>.
- [**RFC8174**] Leiba, B., “Ambiguity of Uppercase vs Lowercase in RFC 2119 Key Words”, BCP 14, RFC 8174, DOI 10.17487/RFC8174, May 2017, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8174>.
- [**RFC8259**] T. Bray, Ed., “The JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) Data Interchange Format”, RFC 8259, DOI 10.17487/RFC8259, December 2017, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8259>.
- [**RFC9562**] Davis, K., Peabody, B., and P. Leach, “Universally Unique IDentifiers (UUIDs)”, RFC 9562, DOI 10.17487/RFC9562, May 2024, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc9562>.
- [**SPDX301**] *The System Package Data Exchange® (SPDX®) Specification Version 3.0.1*, Linux Foundation and its Contributors, 2024, <https://spdx.github.io/spdx-spec/>.

## 1.4 Informative References

- [**CPE23-A**] *Common Platform Enumeration: Applicability Language Specification Version 2.3 (NISTIR 7698)*, D. Waltermire, P. Cichonski, K. Scarfone, Editors, NIST Interagency Report 7698, August 2011, <https://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.IR.7698>.
- [**CPE23-D**] *Common Platform Enumeration: Dictionary Specification Version 2.3*, P. Cichonski, D. Waltermire, K. Scarfone, Editors, NIST Interagency Report 7697, August 2011, <https://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.IR.7697>.
- [**CPE23-M**] *Common Platform Enumeration: Naming Matching Specification Version 2.3*, M. Parmelee, H. Booth, D. Waltermire, K. Scarfone, Editors, NIST Interagency Report 7696, August 2011, <https://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.IR.7696>.
- [**CPE23-N**] *Common Platform Enumeration: Naming Specification Version 2.3*, B. Cheikes, D. Waltermire, K. Scarfone, Editors, NIST Interagency Report 7695, August 2011, <https://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.IR.7695>.
- [**CSAF-v2.0**] *Common Security Advisory Framework Version 2.0*. Edited by Langley Rock, Stefan Hagen, and Thomas Schmidt. 18 November 2022. OASIS Standard. <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.0/os/csaf-v2.0-os.html>. Latest stage: <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.0/csaf-v2.0.html>.
- [**CVE**] *Common Vulnerability and Exposures (CVE) – The Standard for Information Security Vulnerability Names*, MITRE, 1999, Revised Feb. 2016, <https://cve.mitre.org/docs/cve-intro-handout.pdf>.
- [**CVE-NF**] *Common Vulnerability and Exposures (CVE) – The Standard for Information Security Vulnerability Names - CVE ID Syntax Change*, MITRE, January 01, 2014, <https://cve.mitre.org/cve/identifiers/syntaxchange.html>.
- [**CVRF-1-1**] *The Common Vulnerability Reporting Framework (CVRF) Version 1.1*, M. Schiffman, Editor, May 2012, Internet Consortium for Advancement of Security on the Internet (ICASI), <https://www.icas.org/the-common-vulnerability-reporting-framework-cvrf-v1-1/>.
- [**CVRF-v1.2**] *CSAF Common Vulnerability Reporting Framework (CVRF) Version 1.2*. Edited by Stefan Hagen. 13 September 2017. OASIS Committee Specification 01. <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf-cvrf/v1.2/cs01/csaf-cvrf-v1.2-cs01.html>. Latest version: <https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf-cvrf/v1.2/csaf-cvrf-v1.2.html>.
- [**CVSS2**] *A Complete Guide to the Common Vulnerability Scoring System Version 2.0*, P. Mell, K. Scarfone, S. Romanosky, Editors, First.org, Inc., June 2007, <https://www.first.org/cvss/v2/cvss-v2-guide.pdf>.



[CVSS30] *Common Vulnerability Scoring System v3.0: Specification Document*, FIRST.Org, Inc., June 2019, [https://www.first.org/cvss/v30-specification\\_v1.9.pdf](https://www.first.org/cvss/v30-specification_v1.9.pdf).

[CVSS31] *Common Vulnerability Scoring System v3.1: Specification Document*, FIRST.Org, Inc., June 2019, [https://www.first.org/cvss/1/cvss-v31-specification\\_r1.pdf](https://www.first.org/cvss/1/cvss-v31-specification_r1.pdf).

[CVSS40] *Common Vulnerability Scoring System v4.0: Specification Document*, FIRST.Org, Inc., November 9, 2023, <https://www.first.org/cvss/v4-0/cvss-v40-specification.pdf>.

[CWE] *Common Weakness Enumeration (CWE) – A Community-Developed List of Software Weakness Types*, MITRE, 2006, <http://cwe.mitre.org/about/>.

[CYCLONEDX161] *CycloneDX Software Bill-of-Material Specification JSON schema version 1.6.1*, cyclonedx.org, November 7, 2024, <https://github.com/CycloneDX/specification/blob/1.6.1/schema/bom-1.6.schema.json>.

[EPSS] *Exploit Prediction Scoring System (EPSS)*, FIRST.Org, Inc., <https://www.first.org/epss/>

[FETCH] *Fetch: Living Standard*, <https://fetch.spec.whatwg.org>.

[GFMCMARK] *GitHub's fork of cmark, a CommonMark parsing and rendering library and program in C*, <https://github.com/github/cmark>.

[GFMENG] *GitHub Engineering: A formal spec for GitHub Flavored Markdown*, <https://githubengineering.com/a-formal-spec-for-github-markdown/>.

[ISO19770-2] *Information technology — IT asset management — Part 2: Software identification tag*, International Standard, ISO 19770-2:2015, September 30, 2015, <https://www.iso.org/standard/65666.html>.

[ISO29147] *Information technology — Security techniques — Vulnerability disclosure*, International Standard, ISO/IEC 29147:2018, October 23, 2018, <https://www.iso.org/standard/72311.html>.

[OPENSSL] *GTLS/SSL and crypto library*, OpenSSL Software Foundation, <https://www.openssl.org/>.

[PURL] *Package URL (purl)*, GitHub Project, <https://github.com/package-url/purl-spec>.

[RFC3552] Rescorla, E. and B. Korver, “Guidelines for Writing RFC Text on Security Considerations”, BCP 72, RFC 3552, DOI 10.17487/RFC3552, July 2003, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc3552>.

[RFC3986] Berners-Lee, T., Fielding, R., and L. Masinter, “Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax”, STD 66, RFC 3986, DOI 10.17487/RFC3986, January 2005, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc3986>.

[RFC4122] Leach, P., Mealling, M., and R. Salz, “A Universally Unique IDentifier (UUID) URN Namespace”, RFC 4122, DOI 10.17487/RFC4122, July 2005, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc4122>.

[RFC4880] Callas, J., Donnerhackle, L., Finney, H., Shaw, D., and R. Thayer, “OpenPGP Message Format”, RFC 4880, DOI 10.17487/RFC4880, November 2007, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc4880>.

[RFC7231] Fielding, R., Ed., and J. Reschke, Ed., “Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Semantics and Content”, RFC 7231, DOI 10.17487/RFC7231, June 2014, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc7231>.

[RFC8322] Field, J., Banghart, S., and D. Waltermire, “Resource-Oriented Lightweight Information Exchange (ROLIE)”, RFC 8322, DOI 10.17487/RFC8322, February 2018, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8322>.

[RFC8615] Nottingham, M., “Well-Known Uniform Resource Identifiers (URIs)”, RFC 8615, DOI 10.17487/RFC8615, May 2019, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8615>.

[RFC9116] Foudil, E. and Y. Shafranovich, “A File Format to Aid in Security Vulnerability Disclosure”, RFC 9116, DOI 10.17487/RFC9116, April 2022, <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc9116>.

[SCAP12] *The Technical Specification for the Security Content Automation Protocol (SCAP): SCAP Version 1.2*, D. Waltermire, S. Quinn, K. Scarfone, A. Halbardier, Editors, NIST Spec. Publ. 800-126 rev. 2, September 2011, <https://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-126r2>.

[SECURITY-TXT] Foudil, E. and Shafranovich, Y., *Security.txt Project*, <https://securitytxt.org/>.

[**SemVer**] *Semantic Versioning 2.0.0*, T. Preston-Werner, June 2013, <https://semver.org/>.

[**SSVC**] *SSVC: Stakeholder-Specific Vulnerability Categorization*, CERT/CC, <https://certcc.github.io/SSVC/reference/>

[**VERS**] *vers: a mostly universal version range specifier*, Part of the purl GitHub Project, <https://github.com/package-url/purl-spec/blob/master/VERSION-RANGE-SPEC.rst>.

[**VEX**] *Vulnerability-Exploitability eXchange (VEX) - An Overview*, VEX sub-group of the Framing Working Group in the NTIA SBOM initiative, 27 September 2021, [https://ntia.gov/files/ntia/publications/vex\\_one-page\\_summary.pdf](https://ntia.gov/files/ntia/publications/vex_one-page_summary.pdf).

[**VEX-Justification**] *Vulnerability Exploitability eXchange (VEX) - Status Justifications*, VEX sub-group of the Framing Working Group in the CISA SBOM initiative, June 2022, [https://www.cisa.gov/sites/default/files/publications/VEX\\_Status\\_Justification\\_Jun22.pdf](https://www.cisa.gov/sites/default/files/publications/VEX_Status_Justification_Jun22.pdf).

[**XML**] *Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0 (Fifth Edition)*, T. Bray, J. Paoli, M. Sperberg-McQueen, E. Maler, F. Yergeau, Editors, W3C Recommendation, November 26, 2008, <https://www.w3.org/TR/2008/REC-xml-20081126/>. Latest version available at <https://www.w3.org/TR/xml>.

[**XML-Schema-1**] *W3C XML Schema Definition Language (XSD) 1.1 Part 1: Structures*, S. Gao, M. Sperberg-McQueen, H. Thompson, N. Mendelsohn, D. Beech, M. Maloney, Editors, W3C Recommendation, April 5, 2012, <https://www.w3.org/TR/2012/REC-xmlschema11-1-20120405/>. Latest version available at <https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-1/>.

[**XML-Schema-2**] *W3C XML Schema Definition Language (XSD) 1.1 Part 2: Datatypes* W3C XML Schema Definition Language (XSD) 1.1 Part 2: Datatypes, D. Peterson, S. Gao, A. Malhotra, M. Sperberg-McQueen, H. Thompson, Paul V. Biron, Editors, W3C Recommendation, April 5, 2012, <https://www.w3.org/TR/2012/REC-xmlschema11-2-20120405/>. Latest version available at <https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema11-2/>.

## 1.5 Typographical Conventions

Keywords defined by this specification use this monospaced font.

Normative source code uses this paragraph style.

Some sections of this specification are illustrated with non-normative examples introduced with “Example” or “Examples” like so:

*Example 1:*

Informative examples also use this paragraph style but preceded by the text "Example 1".

All examples in this document are informative only.

All other text is normative unless otherwise labeled e.g. like the following informative comment:

This is a pure informative comment that may be present, because the information conveyed is deemed useful advice or common pitfalls learned from implementer or operator experience and often given including the rationale.



## 2 Design Considerations

The Common Security Advisory Framework (CSAF) is a language to exchange Security Advisories formulated in JSON.

The term Security Advisory as used in this document describes any notification of security issues in products of and by providers. Anyone providing a product is considered in this document as a vendor, i.e. developers or maintainers of information system products or services. This includes all authoritative product vendors, Product Security Incident Response Teams (PSIRTs), and product resellers and distributors, including authoritative vendor partners. A security issue is not necessarily constrained to a problem statement, the focus of the term is on the security aspect impacting (or not impacting) specific product-platform-version combinations. Information on presence or absence of workarounds is also considered part of the security issue. This document is the definitive reference for the language elements of CSAF version 2.1. The encompassing JSON schema file noted in the Additional Artifacts section of the title page SHALL be taken as normative in the case a gap or an inconsistency in this explanatory document becomes evident. The following presentation in this section is grouped by topical area, and is not simply derivative documentation from the schema document itself. The information contained aims to be more descriptive and complete. Where applicable, common conventions are stated and known common issues in usage are pointed out informatively to support implementers of document producers and consumers alike.

This minimal required information set does not provide any useful information on products, vulnerabilities, or security advisories. Thus, any real-world Security Advisory will carry additional information as specified in section 3 Schema elements.

Care has been taken, to design the containers for product and vulnerability information to support fine-grained mapping of security advisories onto product and vulnerability and minimize data duplication through referencing. The display of the elements representing Product Tree and Vulnerability information has been placed in the sections named accordingly.

### 2.1 Construction Principles

A Security Advisory defined as a CSAF document is the result of complex orchestration of many players and distinct and partially difficult to play schemas.

The format chosen is [JSONSchema] which allows validation and delegation to sub schema providers. The latter aligns well with separation of concerns and shares the format family of information interchange utilized by the providers of product and vulnerability information which migrated from XML to JSON since the creation of CSAF CVRF version 1.2, the pre-predecessor of this specification.

The acronym CSAF, “Common Security Advisory Framework”, stands for the target of concerted mitigation and remediation accomplishment.

Technically, the use of JSON schema allows validation and proof of model conformance (through established schema based validation) of the declared information inside CSAF documents.

The CSAF schema structures its derived documents into three main classes of the information conveyed:

1. The frame, aggregation, and reference information of the document
2. Product information considered relevant by the creator
3. Vulnerability information and its relation to the products declared in 2.

Wherever possible repetition of data has been replaced by linkage through ID elements. Consistency on the content level thus is in the responsibility of the producer of such documents, to link e.g. vulnerability information to the matching product.

A dictionary like presentation of all defined schema elements is given in the section 3. Any expected relations to other elements (linkage) is described there. This linking relies on setting attribute values accordingly (mostly guided by industry best practice and conventions) and thus implies, that any deep validation on a semantic level (e.g. does the CWE match the described vulnerability) is to be ensured by the producer and consumer of CSAF documents. It is out of scope for this specification.

Proven and intended usage patterns from practice are given where possible.

Delegation to industry best practices technologies is used in referencing schemas for:

- Classification for Document Distribution
  - Traffic Light Protocol (TLP)
    - \* Default Definition: <https://www.first.org/tlp/>
- Exploit Prediction
  - Exploit Prediction Scoring System (EPSS) [EPSS]
- Platform Data
  - Common Platform Enumeration (CPE) Version 2.3 [CPE23-N]
- Vulnerability Categorization
  - Stakeholder-Specific Vulnerability Categorization [SSVC]
    - \* JSON Schema Reference: [https://certcc.github.io/SSVC/data/schema/v1/Decision\\_Point\\_Value\\_Selection-1-0-1.schema.json](https://certcc.github.io/SSVC/data/schema/v1/Decision_Point_Value_Selection-1-0-1.schema.json)
- Vulnerability Classification
  - Common Weakness Enumeration (CWE) [CWE]
    - \* CWE List: <http://cwe.mitre.org/data/index.html>
- Vulnerability Scoring
  - Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) Version 4.0 [CVSS40]
    - \* JSON Schema Reference: <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v4.0.json>
  - Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) Version 3.1 [CVSS31]
    - \* JSON Schema Reference: <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v3.1.json>
  - Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) Version 3.0 [CVSS30]
    - \* JSON Schema Reference: <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v3.0.json>
  - Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) Version 2.0 [CVSS2]
    - \* JSON Schema Reference: <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v2.0.json>

Even though not all - especially the referenced - JSON schemas prohibit specifically additional properties and custom keywords, it is strongly recommended not to use them. Suggestions for new fields SHOULD be made through issues in the TC's GitHub. The JSON schemas defined in this standard do not allow the use of additional properties and custom keywords.

The standardized fields allow for scalability across different issuing parties and dramatically reduce the human effort and need for dedicated parsers as well as other tools on the side of the consuming parties.

Section 4 defined profiles that are used to ensure a common understanding of which fields are required in a given use case. Additional conventions are stated in section 5. The tests given in section 6 support CSAF producers and consumers to verify rules from the specification which can not be tested by the schema. Section 7 states how to distribute and where to find CSAF documents. Safety, Security and Data Protection are considered in section 8. Finally, a set of conformance targets describes tools in the ecosystem.

## 2.2 Format Validation

The JSON schema 2020-12 dialect per default uses the `format` keyword just as annotation. To be able to ensure that the format constraints are validated as intended, the following metaschema is defined.

```
{
  "$schema": "https://json-schema.org/draft/2020-12/schema",
  "$id": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/meta.json",
  "$dynamicAnchor": "meta",
  "$vocabulary": {
    "https://json-schema.org/draft/2020-12/vocab/core": true,
    "https://json-schema.org/draft/2020-12/vocab/format-assertion": true
  },
  "allOf": [
    { "$ref": "https://json-schema.org/draft/2020-12/meta/core" },
    { "$ref": "https://json-schema.org/draft/2020-12/meta/format-assertion" }
  ]
}
```

It is then consequently used in all JSON schemas defined in this standard and replaces the reference to the JSON schema 2020-12.

```
{
  "$schema": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/meta.json",
  // ...
}
```

The format validation is enforced by setting the corresponding vocabulary as required.

If a library used to parse, modify or create CSAF content is unable to deal with this meta schema, it could reach the objective by interpreting the schema as JSON schema 2020-12 dialect and enforcing the format validation via its implementation.

## 2.3 Date and Time

This standard uses the `date-time` format as defined in JSON Schema Draft 2020-12 Section 7.3.1. In accordance with [RFC3339] and [ISO8601-1], the following rules apply:

- The letter T separating the date and time SHALL be upper case.
- The separator between date and time MUST be the letter T.
- The letter Z indicating the timezone UTC SHALL be upper case.
- Fractions of seconds are allowed as specified in the standards mention above with the full stop (.) as separator.
- Leap seconds MUST NOT be used. > While a full support of RFC 3339 would be preferred, significant challenges have been mentioned by implementers as most libraries are lacking > the support for leap seconds. > To ensure interoperability, the decision was made to prohibit leap seconds.
- Empty timezones MUST NOT be used.
- The ABNF of RFC 3339, section 5.6 applies.

### 3 Schema Elements

The CSAF schema describes how to represent security advisory information as a JSON document.

The CSAF schema Version 2.1 builds on the JSON Schema draft 2020-12 rules extended by the format validation enforcement (see 2.2).

```
"$schema": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/meta.json"
```

The schema identifier is:

```
"$id": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/csaf.json"
```

The further documentation of the schema is organized via Definitions and Properties.

- Definitions provide types that extend the JSON schema model
- Properties use these types to support assembling security advisories

Types and properties together provide the vocabulary for the domain specific language supporting security advisories.

The two mandatory properties are `$schema` and `document`. The optional two additional properties are `product_tree` and `vulnerabilities`.

#### 3.1 Definitions

The definitions (`$defs`) introduce the following domain specific types into the CSAF language: Acknowledgments (`acknowledgments_t`), Branches (`branches_t`), Full Product Name (`full_product_name_t`), Language (`lang_t`), Notes (`notes_t`), Product Group ID (`product_group_id_t`), Product Groups (`product_groups_t`), Product ID (`product_id_t`), Products (`products_t`), References (`references_t`), and Version (`version_t`).

```
"$defs": {
  "acknowledgments_t": {
    // ...
  },
  "branches_t": {
    // ...
  },
  "full_product_name_t": {
    // ...
  },
  "lang_t": {
    // ...
  },
  "notes_t": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_group_id_t": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_groups_t": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_id_t": {
```

```

        // ...
    },
    "products_t": {
        // ...
    },
    "references_t": {
        // ...
    },
    "version_t": {
        // ...
    }
},

```

### 3.1.1 Acknowledgments Type

List of Acknowledgments (`acknowledgments_t`) type instances of value type array with 1 or more elements contain a list of Acknowledgment elements.

```

"acknowledgments_t": {
    // ...
    "items": {
        // ...
    }
},

```

The value type of Acknowledgment is `object` with at least 1 and at most 4 properties. Every such element acknowledges contributions by describing those that contributed. The properties are: `names`, `organization`, `summary`, and `urls`.

```

"properties": {
    "names": {
        // ...
    },
    "organization": {
        // ...
    },
    "summary": {
        // ...
    },
    "urls": {
        // ...
    }
}

```

#### 3.1.1.1 Acknowledgments Type - Names

List of acknowledged names (`names`) has value type array with 1 or more items holds the names of contributors being recognized. Every such item of value type `string` with 1 or more characters represents the name of the contributor and contains the name of a single contributor being recognized.

*Examples 1:*

```

Albert Einstein
Johann Sebastian Bach

```

### 3.1.1.2 Acknowledgments Type - Organization

The contributing organization (`organization`) has value type `string` with 1 or more characters and holds the name of the contributing organization being recognized.

*Examples 1:*

```
CISA
Google Project Zero
Talos
```

### 3.1.1.3 Acknowledgments Type - Summary

Summary of the acknowledgment (`summary`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters SHOULD represent any contextual details the document producers wish to make known about the acknowledgment or acknowledged parties.

*Example 1:*

```
First analysis of Coordinated Multi-Stream Attack (CMSA)
```

### 3.1.1.4 Acknowledgments Type - URLs

List of URLs (`urls`) of acknowledgment is a container (value type `array`) for 1 or more `string` of type URL that specifies a list of URLs or location of the reference to be acknowledged. Any URL of acknowledgment contains the URL or location of the reference to be acknowledged. Value type is `string` with format URI (`uri`).

### 3.1.1.5 Acknowledgments Type - Example

*Example 1:*

```
"acknowledgments": [
  {
    "names": [
      "Johann Sebastian Bach",
      "Georg Philipp Telemann",
      "Georg Friedrich Händel"
    ],
    "organization": "Baroque composers",
    "summary": "wonderful music"
  },
  {
    "organization": "CISA",
    "summary": "coordination efforts",
    "urls": [
      "https://cisa.gov"
    ]
  },
  {
    "organization": "BSI",
    "summary": "assistance in coordination"
  },
  {
    "names": [
      "Antonio Vivaldi"
```

```

    ],
    "summary": "influencing other composers"
  }
],

```

The example [1] above SHOULD lead to the following outcome in a human-readable advisory:

We thank the following parties for their efforts:

- Johann Sebastian Bach, Georg Philipp Telemann, Georg Friedrich Händel from Baroque composers for wonderful music
- CISA for coordination efforts (see: <https://cisa.gov>)
- BSI for assistance in coordination
- Antonio Vivaldi for influencing other composers

### 3.1.2 Branches Type

List of branches (branches\_t) with value type array contains 1 or more branch elements as children of the current element.

```

"branches_t": {
  //...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},

```

Every Branch holds exactly 3 properties and is a part of the hierarchical structure of the product tree. The properties name and category are mandatory. In addition, the object contains either a branches or a product property.

```

"properties": {
  "branches": {
    // ...
  },
  "category": {
    // ...
  },
  "name": {
    // ...
  },
  "product": {
    // ...
  }
}

```

branches\_t supports building a hierarchical structure of products that allows to indicate the relationship of products to each other and enables grouping for simpler referencing. As an example, the structure MAY use the following levels: vendor -> product\_family -> product\_name -> product\_version. It is recommended to use the hierarchical structure of vendor -> product\_name -> product\_version whenever possible to support the identification and matching of products on the consumer side.

### 3.1.2.1 Branches Type - Branches

List of branches (`branches`) has the value type `branches_t`.

### 3.1.2.2 Branches Type - Category

Category of the branch (`category`) of value type `string` and `enum` describes the characteristics of the labeled branch. Valid enum values are:

```
architecture
host_name
language
legacy
patch_level
platform
product_family
product_name
product_version
product_version_range
service_pack
specification
vendor
```

The value `architecture` indicates the architecture for which the product is intended.

The value `host_name` indicates the host name of a system/service.

The value `language` indicates the language of the product.

The value `legacy` indicates an entry that has reached its end of life.

The value `patch_level` indicates the patch level of the product.

The value `platform` indicates the (CPU) platform for which the product is intended.

The value `product_family` indicates the product family that the product falls into.

The value `product_name` indicates the name of the product.

The value `product_version` indicates exactly a single version of the product. The value of the adjacent `name` property can be numeric or some other descriptor. However, it **MUST NOT** contain version ranges of any kind.

It is recommended to enumerate versions wherever possible. Nevertheless, the TC understands that this is sometimes impossible. To reflect that in the specification and aid in automatic processing of CSAF documents the value `product_version_range` was introduced. See next section for details.

The value `product_version_range` indicates a range of versions for the product. The value of the adjacent `name` property **SHOULD NOT** be used to convey a single version.

The value `service_pack` indicates the service pack of the product.

The value `specification` indicates the specification such as a standard, best common practice, etc.

The value `vendor` indicates the name of the vendor or manufacturer that makes the product.



### 3.1.2.3 Branches Type - Name

Name of the branch (name) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters contains the canonical descriptor or ‘friendly name’ of the branch.

*Examples 1:*

```
10
365
Microsoft
Office
PCS 7
SIMATIC
Siemens
Windows
```

A leading `v` or `V` in the value of `name` SHOULD only exist for the categories `product_version` or `product_version_range` if it is part of the product version as given by the vendor.

#### 3.1.2.3.1 Branches Type - Name under Product Version

If adjacent property category has the value `product_version`, the value of `name` MUST NOT contain version ranges of any kind.

*Examples 1 (for name when using `product_version`):*

```
10
17.4
v3
```

The `product_version` is the easiest way for users to determine whether their version is meant (provided that the given ancestors in the product tree matched): If both version strings are the same, it is a match - otherwise not. Therefore, it is always recommended to enumerate product versions instead of providing version ranges.

*Examples 2 (for name when using `product_version` which are invalid):*

```
8.0.0 - 8.0.1
8.1.5 and later
<= 2
prior to 4.2
All versions < V3.0.29
V3.0, V4.0, V4.1, V4.2
```

All the examples above contain some kind of a version range and are therefore invalid under the category `product_version`.

#### 3.1.2.3.2 Branches Type - Name under Product Version Range

If adjacent property category has the value `product_version_range`, the value of `name` MUST contain version ranges. The value of `MUST` obey to exactly one of the following options:

1. Version Range Specifier (`vers`)

vers is an ongoing community effort to address the problem of version ranges. Its draft specification is available at [VERS].

vers MUST be used in its canonical form. To convey the term “all versions” the special string `vers:all/*` MUST be used.

*Examples 1 (for name when using product\_version\_range with vers):*

```
vers:gem/>=2.2.0|!=2.2.1|<2.3.0
vers:npm/1.2.3|>=2.0.0|<5.0.0
vers:pypi/0.0.0|0.0.1|0.0.2|0.0.3|1.0|2.0pre1
vers:tomee/>=8.0.0-M1|<=8.0.1
```

Through the definitions of the vers specification a user can compute whether a given version is in a given range.

## 2. Vers-like Specifier (vls)

This option uses only the `<version-constraint>` part from the vers specification. It MUST NOT have an URI nor the `<versioning-scheme>` part. It is a fallback option and SHOULD NOT be used unless really necessary. > The reason for that is, that it is nearly impossible for tools to reliably determine whether a given version is in the range or not.

Tools MAY support this on best effort basis.

*Examples 2 (for name when using product\_version\_range with vls):*

```
<=2
<4.2
<V3.0.29
>=8.1.5
>10.9a|!=10.9c|!=10.9f|<=10.9k
<2024-4-pabc0019|>2024-10-pefd0010|<2024-12-pjkl2010|>2024-12-pjkl5010|<=2025-
1-pghi1001
```

### 3.1.2.4 Branches Type - Product

Product (product) has the value type Full Product Name (`full_product_name_t`).

### 3.1.3 Full Product Name Type

Full Product Name (`full_product_name_t`) with value type object specifies information about the product and assigns the product ID. The properties `name` and `product_id` are required. The property `product_identification_helper` is optional.

```
"full_product_name_t": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      // ...
    },
    "product_id": {
      // ...
    },
    "product_identification_helper": {
      // ...
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }
  }
},
```

### 3.1.3.1 Full Product Name Type - Name

Textual description of the product (name) has value type `string` with 1 or more characters. The value **SHOULD** be the product's full canonical name, including version number and other attributes, as it would be used in a human-friendly document.

*Examples 1:*

```
Cisco AnyConnect Secure Mobility Client 2.3.185
Microsoft Host Integration Server 2006 Service Pack 1
```

### 3.1.3.2 Full Product Name Type - Product ID

Product ID (`product_id`) holds a value of type Product ID (`product_id_t`).

### 3.1.3.3 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper

Helper to identify the product (`product_identification_helper`) of value type `object` provides in its properties at least one method which aids in identifying the product in an asset database. Of the given eight properties `cpe`, `hashes`, `model_numbers`, `purls`, `sbom_urls`, `serial_numbers`, `skus`, and `x_generic_uris`, one is mandatory.

```
"product_identification_helper": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "cpe": {
      // ...
    },
    "hashes": {
      // ...
    },
    "model_numbers": {
      // ...
    },
    "purls": {
      // ...
    },
    "sbom_urls": {
      // ...
    },
    "serial_numbers": {
      // ...
    },
    "skus": {
      // ...
    },
    "x_generic_uris": {
      // ...
    }
  }
}
```

A helper to identify the product SHALL identify the product described by the name in its entirety. A matching algorithm has to be able to rely on the `product_identification_helper` information during the matching without having to check e.g. the branches hierarchy leading to the product.

Therefore, it is, for example, prohibited to omit the version from the CPE if a `product_version` was given in branches hierarchy leading to the product.

#### 3.1.3.3.1 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - CPE

Common Platform Enumeration representation (cpe) of value type string of 5 or more characters with pattern (regular expression):

[illegible]

The Common Platform Enumeration (CPE) attribute refers to a method for naming platforms external to this specification. See [CPE23-N] for details.

Both, CPE 2.2 and CPE 2.3, are supported in CSAF.

### 3.1.3.3.2 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - Hashes

List of hashes (hashes) of value type array holding at least one item contains a list of cryptographic hashes usable to identify files.

```
"hashes": {
    // ...
    "items": {
        // ...
    }
},
```

Cryptographic hashes of value type `object` contains all information to identify a file based on its cryptographic hash values. Any cryptographic hashes object has the 2 mandatory properties `file_hashes` and `filename`.

```
"properties": {
  "file_hashes": {
    // ...
  },
  "filename": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

List of file hashes (`file_hashes`) of value type `array` holding at least one item contains a list of cryptographic hashes for this file.

```

"file_hashes": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},

```

Each File hash of value type `object` contains one hash value and algorithm of the file to be identified. Any File hash object has the 2 mandatory properties `algorithm` and `value`.

```

"properties": {
  "algorithm": {
    // ...
  },
  "value": {
    // ...
  }
}

```

The algorithm of the cryptographic hash representation (`algorithm`) of value type `string` with one or more characters contains the name of the cryptographic hash algorithm used to calculate the value. The default value for `algorithm` is `sha256`.

*Examples 1:*

```

blake2b512
sha256
sha3-512
sha384
sha512

```

These values are derived from the currently supported digests OpenSSL [OPENSSL]. Leading dashes were removed.

The command `openssl dgst -list` (Version 3.4.0 from 2024-10-22) outputs the following:

Supported digests:

<code>-blake2b512</code>	<code>-blake2s256</code>	<code>-md4</code>
<code>-md5</code>	<code>-md5-sha1</code>	<code>-mdc2</code>
<code>-ripemd</code>	<code>-ripemd160</code>	<code>-rmd160</code>
<code>-sha1</code>	<code>-sha224</code>	<code>-sha256</code>
<code>-sha3-224</code>	<code>-sha3-256</code>	<code>-sha3-384</code>
<code>-sha3-512</code>	<code>-sha384</code>	<code>-sha512</code>
<code>-sha512-224</code>	<code>-sha512-256</code>	<code>-shake128</code>
<code>-shake256</code>	<code>-sm3</code>	<code>-ssl3-md5</code>
<code>-ssl3-sha1</code>	<code>-whirlpool</code>	

The Value of the cryptographic hash representation (`value`) of value type `string` of 32 or more characters with `pattern` (regular expression):

```

^[0-9a-fA-F]{32,}$

```

The Value of the cryptographic hash attribute contains the cryptographic hash value in hexadecimal representation.

*Examples 2:*

```
37df33cb7464da5c7f077f4d56a32bc84987ec1d85b234537c1c1a4d4fc8d09dc29e2e762cb5203677b
4775203615d9534a8bfca96a93dc8b461a489f69124a130d786b42204f3341cc
9ea4c8200113d49d26505da0e02e2f49055dc078d1ad7a419b32e291c7afebbb84badfbd46dec42883b
```

The filename representation (`filename`) of value type `string` with one or more characters contains the name of the file which is identified by the hash values.

*Examples 3:*

```
WINWORD.EXE
msotaddin.dll
sudoers.so
```

If the value of the hash matches and the filename does not, a user **SHOULD** prefer the hash value. In such cases, the filename **SHOULD** be used as informational property.

### 3.1.3.3.3 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - Model Numbers

The list of models (`model_numbers`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items contains a list of model numbers.

A list of models **SHOULD** only be used if a certain range of model numbers with its corresponding software version is affected, or the model numbers change during update.

This can also be used to identify hardware. If necessary, the software, or any other related part, **SHALL** be bind to that via a product relationship.

```
"model_numbers": {
  //...
  "items": {
    //...
  }
},
```

Any given model number of value type `string` with at least 1 character represents a model number of the component to identify - possibly with placeholders.

The terms “model”, “model number” and “model variant” are mostly used synonymously. Often it is abbreviated as “MN”, M/N” or “model no.”.

If a part of a model number of the component to identify is given, it **MUST** begin at the first and end at the last character position of the string representing the targeted component. The wildcard characters `?` (for a single character) and `*` (for zero or more characters) signal exclusion of characters at these positions from matching. This applies also to the first character. An unescaped `*` **MUST** be the only `*` wildcard in the string. As part of the model number, the special characters `?`, `*` and `\` **MUST** be escaped with `\`.

**Note:** A backslash **MUST** be escaped itself in a JSON string.

*Examples 1:*

```
*-G109A/EU?
2024-*
6RA8096-4MV62-0AA0
6RA801?-??V62-0AA0
IC25T060ATCS05-0
```

#### 3.1.3.3.4 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - purls

List of purls (purl's) of value type array with 1 or more unique items contains a list of package URL (purl) identifiers.

```
"purls": {
  //...
  "items": {
    //...
  }
},
```

A package URL representation is a string of 7 or more characters with pattern (regular expression):

```
^pkg:[A-Za-z\\.\\-\\+][A-Za-z0-9\\.\\-\\+]*\\.\\.+
```

The given pattern does not completely evaluate whether a purl is valid according to the [PURL] specification. It provides a more generic approach and general guidance to enable forward compatibility. CSAF uses only the canonical form of purl to conform with section 3.3 of [RFC3986]. Therefore, URLs starting with `pkg://` are considered invalid.

The package URL (purl) attribute refers to a method for reliably identifying and locating software packages external to this specification. See [PURL] for details. Multiple purls can be specified to allow for identifiers to locate identical components in different locations.

If multiple purls are specified, they SHALL only differ in their qualifiers. Otherwise, separate product branches SHOULD be used to differentiate between the components.

#### 3.1.3.3.5 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - SBOM URLs

The list of SBOM URLs (sbom\_urls) of value type array with 1 or more items contains a list of URLs where SBOMs for this product can be retrieved.

The SBOMs might differ in format or depth of detail. Currently supported formats are SPDX, CycloneDX, and SWID.

```
"sbom_urls": {
  //...
  "items": {
    //...
  }
},
```

Any given SBOM URL of value type string with format uri contains a URL of one SBOM for this product.

*Examples 1:*

```
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/CycloneDX/bom-examples/master/SBOM/keycloak-10.0.0
https://swinslow.net/spdx-examples/example4/main-bin-v2
```

### 3.1.3.3.6 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - Serial Numbers

The list of serial numbers (`serial_numbers`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items contains a list of serial numbers.

A list of serial numbers SHOULD only be used if a certain range of serial numbers with its corresponding software version is affected, or the serial numbers change during update.

```
"serial_numbers": {
  //...
  "items": {
    //...
  }
},
```

Any given serial number of value type `string` with at least 1 character represents a serial number of the component to identify - possibly with placeholders.

If a part of a serial number of the component to identify is given, it MUST begin at the first and end at the last character position of the string representing the targeted component. The wildcard characters `?` (for a single character) and `*` (for zero or more characters) signal exclusion of characters at these positions from matching. This applies also to the first character. An unescaped `*` MUST be the only `*` wildcard in the string. As part of the serial number, the special characters `?`, `*` and `\` MUST be escaped with `\`.

Note: A backslash MUST be escaped itself in a JSON string.

Examples 1:

```
*RF8R71YR???
11S45N0249Z1ZS9*
DSEP147100
L15-VM-???
L234.696.30.044.712
```

### 3.1.3.3.7 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - SKUs

The list of stock keeping units (`skus`) of value type `array` with 1 or more items contains a list of full or abbreviated (partial) stock keeping units.

A list of stock keeping units SHOULD only be used if the list of relationships is used to decouple e.g. hardware from the software, or the stock keeping units change during update. In the latter case the remediations SHALL include the new stock keeping units or a description how it can be obtained.

The use of the list of relationships in the first case is important. Otherwise, the end user is unable to identify which version (the affected or the not affected / fixed one) is used.

```
"skus": {
  //...
  "items": {
    //...
  }
},
```

Any given stock keeping unit of value type `string` with at least 1 character represents a full or abbreviated (partial) stock keeping unit (SKU) of the component to identify.



Sometimes this is also called “item number”, “article number” or “product number”.

If a part of a stock keeping unit of the component to identify is given, it SHOULD begin with the first character of the stock keeping unit and stop at any point. Characters which SHOULD NOT be matched MUST be replaced by either ? (for a single character) or \* (for zero or more characters). Two \* MUST NOT follow each other.

### 3.1.3.3.8 Full Product Name Type - Product Identification Helper - Generic URIs

List of generic URIs (`x_generic_uris`) of value type `array` with at least 1 item contains a list of identifiers which are either vendor-specific or derived from a standard not yet supported.

```
"x_generic_uris": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

Any such Generic URI item of value type `object` provides the two mandatory properties `Namespace (namespace)` and `URI (uri)`.

```
"properties": {
  "namespace": {
    // ...
  },
  "uri": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

The namespace of the generic URI (`namespace`) of value type `string` with format `uri` refers to a URL which provides the name and knowledge about the specification used or is the namespace in which these values are valid.

The URI (`uri`) of value type `string` with format `uri` contains the identifier itself.

These elements can be used to reference a specific component from an SBOM:

*Example 1 (linking a component from a CycloneDX SBOM using the bomlink mechanism):*

```
"x_generic_uris": [
  {
    "namespace": "https://cyclonedx.org/capabilities/bomlink/",
    "uri": "urn:cdx:411dafd2-c29f-491a-97d7-e97de5bc2289/1#pkg:maven/org.jboss.logging@3.4.1.Final?type=jar"
  }
]
```

*Example 2 (linking a component from an SPDX SBOM):*

```

"x_generic_uris": [
  {
    "namespace": "https://spdx.github.io/spdx-spec/latest/document-creation-
information/#65-spdx-document-namespace-field",
    "uri": "https://swinslow.net/spdx-examples/example4/main-bin-v2#SPDXRef-
libc"
  }
]

```

### 3.1.4 Language Type

Language type (`lang_t`) has value type string with pattern (regular expression):

```

^((([A-Za-z]{2,3}([A-Za-z]{3}([A-Za-z]{3}){0,2})?|[A-Za-z]{4,8})([A-Za-z]{4})?(-
([A-Za-z]{2}|[0-9]{3}))?(-([A-Za-z0-9]{5,8}|[0-9][A-Za-z0-9]{3}))*(-[A-WY-Za-wy-z0-
9](-[A-Za-z0-9]{2,8})+)*(-[Xx](-[A-Za-z0-9]{1,8})+)?|[Xx](-[A-Za-z0-9]{1,8})+|[Ii]-
[Dd][Ee][Ff][Aa][Uu][Ll][Tt]|[Ii]-[Mm][Ii][Nn][Gg][Oo]))$

```

The value identifies a language, corresponding to IETF BCP 47 / RFC 5646. See IETF language registry: <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry/language-subtag-registry>

CSAF skips those grandfathered language tags that are deprecated at the time of writing the specification. Even though the private use language tags are supported they should not be used to ensure readability across the ecosystem. It is recommended to follow the conventions for the capitalization of the subtags even though it is not mandatory as most users are used to that.

*Examples 1:*

```

de
en
fr
frc
jp

```

### 3.1.5 Notes Type

List of notes (`notes_t`) of value type array with 1 or more items of type `Note` contains notes which are specific to the current context.

```

"notes_t": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},

```

Value type of every such `Note` item is `object` with the mandatory properties `category` and `text` providing a place to put all manner of text blobs related to the current context. A `Note` `object` MAY provide the optional properties `audience`, `group_ids`, `product_ids` and `title`.

```

"properties": {
  "audience": {
    // ...
  },
  "category": {
    // ...
  },
  "group_ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_ids": {
    // ...
  }
  "text": {
    // ...
  },
  "title": {
    // ...
  }
}

```

Audience of note (audience) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters indicates who is intended to read it.

*Examples 1:*

```

all
executives
operational management and system administrators
safety engineers

```

Note category (category) of value type `string` and `enum` contains the information of what kind of note this is. Valid `enum` values are:

```

description
details
faq
general
legal_disclaimer
other
summary

```

The value `description` indicates the note is a description of something. The optional sibling property `title` MAY have more information in this case.

The value `details` indicates the note is a low-level detailed discussion. The optional sibling property `title` MAY have more information in this case.

The value `faq` indicates the note is a list of frequently asked questions.

The value `general` indicates the note is a general, high-level note. The optional sibling property `title` MAY have more information in this case.

The value `legal_disclaimer` indicates the note represents any possible legal discussion, including constraints, surrounding the document.

The value `other` indicates the note is something that doesn't fit the other categories. The optional sibling attribute `title` SHOULD have more information to indicate clearly what kind of note to expect in this case.

The value `summary` indicates the note is a summary of something. The optional sibling property `title` MAY have more information in this case.

Group IDs (`group_ids`) are of value type Product Groups (`product_groups_t`) and contain a list of Product Groups the current note item applies to.

Product IDs (`product_ids`) are of value type Products (`products_t`) and contain a list of Products the current note item applies to.

Note content (`text`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters holds the content of the note. Content varies depending on type.

Title of note (`title`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters provides a concise description of what is contained in the text of the note.

*Examples 2:*

```
Details
Executive summary
Technical summary
Impact on safety systems
```

### 3.1.6 Product Group ID Type

The Product Group ID Type (`product_group_id_t`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters is a reference token for product group instances. The value is a token required to identify a group of products so that it can be referred to from other parts in the document. There is no predefined or required format for the Product Group ID (`product_group_id`) as long as it uniquely identifies a product group in the context of the current document.

```
"product_group_id_t": {
  // ...
},
```

*Examples 1:*

```
CSAFGID-0001
CSAFGID-0002
CSAFGID-0020
```

Even though the standard does not require a specific format it is recommended to use different prefixes for the Product ID and the Product Group ID to support reading and parsing the document.

### 3.1.7 Product Groups Type

List of Product Group ID (`product_groups_t`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a `set`) of type Product Group ID (`product_group_id_t`) specifies a list of `product_group_ids` to give context to the parent item.

```
"product_groups_t": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

### 3.1.8 Product ID Type

The Product ID Type (`product_id_t`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters is a reference token for product instances. The value is a token required to identify a `full_product_name` so that it can be referred to from other parts in the document. There is no predefined or required format for the Product ID (`product_id`) as long as it uniquely identifies a product in the context of the current document.

```
"product_id_t": {
  // ...
},
```

*Examples 1:*

```
CSAFPID-0004
CSAFPID-0008
```

Even though the standard does not require a specific format it is recommended to use different prefixes for the Product ID and the Product Group ID to support reading and parsing the document.

### 3.1.9 Products Type

List of Product IDs (`products_t`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a `set`) of type Product ID (`product_id_t`) specifies a list of `product_ids` to give context to the parent item.

```
"products_t": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

### 3.1.10 References Type

List of references (`references_t`) of value type `array` with 1 or more items of type `Reference` holds a list of `Reference` objects.

```
"references_t": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Value type of every such `Reference` item is `object` with the mandatory properties `url` and `summary` holding any reference to conferences, papers, advisories, and other resources that are related and considered related to either a surrounding part of or the entire document and to be of value to the document consumer. A reference `object` MAY provide the optional property `category`.

```
"properties": {
  "category": {
    // ...
  },
  "summary": {
    // ...
  },
  "url": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

Category of reference (`category`) of value type `string` and `enum` indicates whether the reference points to the same document or vulnerability in focus (depending on scope) or to an external resource. Valid `enum` values are:

```
external
self
```

The default value for `category` is `external`.

The value `external` indicates, that this document is an external reference to a document or vulnerability in focus (depending on scope).

The value `self` indicates, that this document is a reference to this same document or vulnerability (also depending on scope).

This includes links to documents with the same content but different file format (e.g. advisories as PDF or HTML).

Summary of the reference (`summary`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters indicates what this reference refers to.

URL of reference (`url`) of value type `string` with format `uri` provides the URL for the reference.

### 3.1.11 Version Type

The Version (`version_t`) type has value type `string` with pattern (regular expression):

```
^(0|[1-9][0-9]*)$|^((0|[1-9]\\d*)\\. (0|[1-9]\\d*)\\. (0|[1-9]\\d*) (?:-((?:0|[1-9]\\d*|zA-Z-|[0-9a-zA-Z-]*) (?:\\. (?:0|[1-9]\\d*|\\d*[a-zA-Z-][0-9a-zA-Z-]*) )*) )?) (?:\\+([0-9a-zA-Z-]+(?:\\. [0-9a-zA-Z-]+)*) )?) )$
```

The version specifies a version string to denote clearly the evolution of the content of the document. There are two options how it can be used:

- semantic versioning (preferred; according to the rules below)
- integer versioning

A CSAF document **MUST** use only one versioning system.

*Examples 1:*

```
1
4
0.9.0
1.4.3
2.40.0+21AF26D3
```

#### 3.1.11.1 Version Type - Integer versioning

Integer versioning increments for each version where the `/document/tracking/status` is `final` the version number by one. The regular expression for this type is:

```
^(0|[1-9][0-9]*)$
```

The following rules apply:

1. Once a versioned document has been released, the contents of that version **MUST NOT** be modified. Any modifications **MUST** be released as a new version.
2. Version zero (0) is for initial development before the `initial_release_date`. The document status **MUST** be `draft`. Anything **MAY** change at any time. The document **SHOULD NOT** be considered stable.
3. Version 1 defines the initial release to the specified target group. Each new version where `/document/tracking/status` is `final` has a version number incremented by one.
4. Pre-release versions (document status `draft`) **MUST** carry the new version number. Sole exception is before the initial release (see rule 2). The combination of document status `draft` and version 1 **MAY** be used to indicate that the content is unlikely to change.
5. Build metadata is never included in the version.
6. Precedence **MUST** be determined by integer comparison.

### 3.1.11.2 Version Type - Semantic versioning

Semantic versioning derived the rules from [SemVer]. The regular expression for this type is:

```
^((0|[1-9]\\d*)\\. (0|[1-9]\\d*)\\. (0|[1-9]\\d*) (?:-((?:0|[1-9]\\d*|\\d*[a-zA-Z-][0-9a-zA-Z-]*) (?:\\.(?:0|[1-9]\\d*|\\d*[a-zA-Z-][0-9a-zA-Z-]*)*)?) (?:\\+([0-9a-zA-Z-]+)(?:\\.[0-9a-zA-Z-]+)*)?)?)$
```

The goal of this structure is to provide additional information to the end user whether a new comparison with the asset database is needed. The “public API” in regards to CSAF is the CSAF document with its structure and content. This results in the following rules:

1. A normal version number MUST take the form X.Y.Z where X, Y, and Z are non-negative integers, and MUST NOT contain leading zeroes. X is the major version, Y is the minor version, and Z is the patch version. Each element MUST increase numerically. For instance: 1.9.0 -> 1.10.0 -> 1.11.0.
2. Once a versioned document has been released, the contents of that version MUST NOT be modified. Any modifications MUST be released as a new version.
3. Major version zero (0.y.z) is for initial development before the `initial_release_date`. The document status MUST be `draft`. Anything MAY change at any time. The document SHOULD NOT be considered stable. Changes which would increment the major version according to rule 7 are tracked in this stage with (0.y.z) by incrementing the minor version y instead. Changes that would increment the minor or patch version according to rule 6 or 5 are both tracked in this stage with (0.y.z) by incrementing the patch version z instead.
4. Version 1.0.0 defines the initial release to the specified target group. The way in which the version number is incremented after this release is dependent on the content and structure of the document and how it changes.
5. Patch version Z (x.y.Z | x > 0) MUST be incremented if only backwards compatible bug fixes are introduced. A bug fix is defined as an internal change that fixes incorrect behavior.

In the context of the document this is the case e.g. for spelling mistakes.

6. Minor version Y (x.Y.z | x > 0) MUST be incremented if the content of an existing element changes except for those which are covert through rule 7. It MUST be incremented if substantial new information are introduced or new elements are provided. It MAY include patch level changes. Patch version MUST be reset to 0 when minor version is incremented.
7. Major version X (X.y.z | X > 0) MUST be incremented if a new comparison with the end user’s asset database is required. This includes:
  - changes (adding, removing elements or modifying content) in `/product_tree` or elements which contain `/product_tree` in their path
  - adding or removing items of `/vulnerabilities`
  - adding or removing elements in:
    - `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_affected`
    - `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected`
    - `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/last_affected`
  - removing elements from:
    - `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_fixed`
    - `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/fixed`
    - `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_not_affected`

It MAY also include minor and patch level changes. Patch and minor version MUST be reset to 0 when major version is incremented.



8. A pre-release version (document status `draft`) MAY be denoted by appending a hyphen and a series of dot separated identifiers immediately following the patch version. Identifiers MUST comprise only ASCII alphanumerics and hyphens [0-9A-Za-z-]. Identifiers MUST NOT be empty. Numeric identifiers MUST NOT include leading zeroes. Pre-release versions have a lower precedence than the associated normal version. A pre-release version indicates that the version is unstable and might not satisfy the intended compatibility requirements as denoted by its associated normal version.

*Examples 1:*

```
1.0.0-0.3.7
1.0.0-alpha
1.0.0-alpha.1
1.0.0-x-y-z.--
1.0.0-x.7.z.92
```

9. Pre-release MUST NOT be included if `/document/tracking/status` is `final`.
10. Build metadata MAY be denoted by appending a plus sign and a series of dot separated identifiers immediately following the patch or pre-release version. Identifiers MUST comprise only ASCII alphanumerics and hyphens [0-9A-Za-z-]. Identifiers MUST NOT be empty. Build metadata MUST be ignored when determining version precedence. Thus two versions that differ only in the build metadata, have the same precedence.

*Examples 2:*

```
1.0.0+20130313144700
1.0.0+21AF26D3---117B344092BD
1.0.0-alpha+001
1.0.0-beta+exp.sha.5114f85
```

11. Precedence refers to how versions are compared to each other when ordered.
1. Precedence MUST be calculated by separating the version into major, minor, patch and pre-release identifiers in that order (Build metadata does not figure into precedence).
  2. Precedence is determined by the first difference when comparing each of these identifiers from left to right as follows: Major, minor, and patch versions are always compared numerically.

*Example 3:*

```
1.0.0 < 2.0.0 < 2.1.0 < 2.1.1
```

3. When major, minor, and patch are equal, a pre-release version has lower precedence than a normal version:

*Example 4:*

```
1.0.0-alpha < 1.0.0
```

4. Precedence for two pre-release versions with the same major, minor, and patch version MUST be determined by comparing each dot separated identifier from left to right until a difference is found as follows:
1. Identifiers consisting of only digits are compared numerically.
  2. Identifiers with letters or hyphens are compared lexically in ASCII sort order.
  3. Numeric identifiers always have lower precedence than non-numeric identifiers.
  4. A larger set of pre-release fields has a higher precedence than a smaller set, if all of the preceding identifiers are equal.

*Example 5:*

```
1.0.0-alpha < 1.0.0-alpha.1 < 1.0.0-alpha.beta < 1.0.0-beta < 1.0.0-beta.2 < 1.0.0-beta.11 < 1.0.0-rc.1 < 1.0.0
```

Note, that the following values do not conform to the semantic versioning described above.

*Examples 6 (which are invalid):*

```
1.16.13.14-Cor
1.0.0-x-y-z.-
1.0.0+21AF26D3--117B344092BD
2.5.20+3f93da6b+7cc
3.20.0-00
```

## 3.2 Properties

These final four subsections document the four properties of a CSAF document. The two mandatory properties `$schema` and `document`, as well as the optional properties `product_tree` and `vulnerabilities` in that order.

### 3.2.1 Schema Property

JSON schema (`$schema`) of value type `string` and `enum` with format `uri` contains the URL of the CSAF JSON schema which the document promises to be valid for. The single valid value for this `enum` is:

```
https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/csaf.json
```

This value allows for tools to identify that a JSON document is meant to be valid against this schema. Tools can use that to support users by automatically checking whether the CSAF adheres to the JSON schema identified by this URL.

### 3.2.2 Document Property

Document level meta-data (`document`) of value type `object` with the 6 mandatory properties `Category` (`category`), `CSAF Version` (`csaf_version`), `Distribution` (`distribution`), `Publisher` (`publisher`), `Title` (`title`), and `Tracking` (`tracking`) captures the meta-data about this document describing a particular set of security advisories. In addition, the `document` object MAY provide the 7 optional properties `Acknowledgments` (`acknowledgments`), `Aggregate Severity` (`aggregate_severity`), `Language` (`lang`), `License expression` (`license_expression`), `Notes` (`notes`), `References` (`references`), and `Source Language` (`source_lang`).

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "acknowledgments": {
      // ...
    },
    "aggregate_severity" : {
      // ...
    },
    "category": {
      // ...
    },
    "csaf_version": {
      // ...
    },
    "distribution": {
```

```

    // ...
  },
  "lang": {
    // ...
  },
  "license_expression": {
    // ...
  },
  "notes": {
    // ...
  },
  "publisher": {
    // ...
  },
  "references": {
    // ...
  },
  "source_lang": {
    // ...
  },
  "title": {
    // ...
  },
  "tracking": {
    // ...
  }
}
},

```

### 3.2.2.1 Document Property - Acknowledgments

Document acknowledgments (acknowledgments) of value type Acknowledgments Type (acknowledgments\_t) contains a list of acknowledgment elements associated with the whole document.

```

"acknowledgments": {
  // ...
},

```

### 3.2.2.2 Document Property - Aggregate Severity

Aggregate severity (aggregate\_severity) of value type object with the mandatory property text and the optional property namespace is a vehicle that is provided by the document producer to convey the urgency and criticality with which the one or more vulnerabilities reported should be addressed. It is a document-level metric and applied to the document as a whole — not any specific vulnerability. The range of values in this field is defined according to the document producer's policies and procedures.

```

"aggregate_severity": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "namespace": {
      // ...
    },
  },

```

```

    "text": {
      // ...
    }
  },

```

The Namespace of aggregate severity (`namespace`) of value type `string` with format `uri` points to the namespace so referenced.

The Text of aggregate severity (`text`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters provides a severity which is independent of - and in addition to - any other standard metric for determining the impact or severity of a given vulnerability (such as CVSS).

*Examples 1:*

```

Critical
Important
Moderate

```

### 3.2.2.3 Document Property - Category

Document category (`category`) with value type `string` of 1 or more characters with `pattern` (regular expression):

```

^[^\\s\\-_\\.](.*[^\\s\\-_\\.])?$

```

Document category defines a short canonical name, chosen by the document producer, which will inform the end user as to the category of document.

It is directly related to the profiles defined in section 4.

```

"category": {
  // ...
}

```

*Examples 1:*

```

csaf_base
csaf_security_advisory
csaf_vex
Example Company Security Notice

```

### 3.2.2.4 Document Property - CSAF Version

CSAF version (`csaf_version`) of value type `string` and `enum` gives the version of the CSAF specification which the document was generated for. The single valid value for this `enum` is:

```

2.1

```

### 3.2.2.5 Document Property - Distribution

Rules for sharing document (`distribution`) of value type `object` with the mandatory property Traffic Light Protocol (TLP) (`tlp`) and the optional properties Sharing Group (`Sharing Group`) and Text (`text`) describes any constraints on how this document might be shared.

```
"distribution": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "sharing_group": {
      // ...
    },
    "text": {
      // ...
    },
    "tlp": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},
```

If multiple values are present, the TLP information **SHOULD** be preferred as this aids in automation. The Sharing Group **SHALL** be interpreted as specification to the TLP information. Therefore, the Sharing Group **MAY** also be used to convey special TLP restrictions:

*Examples 1:*

```
E-ISAC members-only
Only releasable to European Energy sector
Releasable to NATO countries
```

Note that for such restrictions the Sharing Group Name **MUST** exist and all participants **MUST** know the associated Sharing Group IDs to allow for automation.

#### 3.2.2.5.1 Document Property - Distribution - Sharing Group

Sharing Group (`sharing_group`) of value type `object` with the mandatory property Sharing Group ID (`id`) and the optional property Sharing Group Name (`name`) contains information about the group this document is intended to be shared with.

```
"sharing_group": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      // ...
    },
    "name": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},
```

Sharing Group ID (`id`) of value type `string` with format `uuid` and `pattern` (regular expression):

```
^((([0-9a-f]{8}-[0-9a-f]{4}-4[0-9a-f]{3}-[0-9a-f]{4}-[0-9a-f]{12})|([0]{8}-([0]{4}-){3}[0]{12})|([f]{8}-([f]{4}-){3}[f]{12})))$
```

Sharing Group ID provides the unique ID for the sharing group. This ID is intended to be globally unique and MAY also be used by different issuing parties to share CSAF data within a closed group, e.g. during a Multi-Party Coordinated Vulnerability Disclosure case.

Note, that participants in such cases usually differ. Therefore, it is advised to use one ID per case. Otherwise, the consequences of adding or removing parties from a case and the implications to other cases have to be considered.

The ID SHOULD NOT change throughout different CSAF documents, if the same sharing group is addressed. It MUST differ if a different sharing group is addressed.

It is assumed that the ID is globally unique, if constructed according to the specification for UUID Version 4.

The ID SHALL be valid according to [RFC9562] and recorded in the 8-4-4-4-12 notation in lower case. The ID SHALL be a UUID Version 4 for any closed sharing group, i.e. `TLP:GREEN` and above.

The following ID values SHOULD NOT be used unless there are technical reasons for them. Therefore, they are reserved for implementation-specific situations:

- A system MAY use the Max UUID for `TLP:CLEAR` CSAF documents. > For example, the system uses the UUID as an indication whether a user allowed to see the document. > The security considerations from [RFC9562] should be reflected on.
- A system MAY use the Nil UUID for CSAF documents that MUST NOT be shared. > For example, the CSAF document is just being drafted and the accidental leakage should be prevented.

Note, that both values do not indicate a closed sharing group.

A CSAF document with `TLP:CLEAR` SHOULD NOT contain a sharing group value and SHALL NOT contain any other value for the Sharing Group ID than Max UUID (`ffffffff-ffff-ffff-ffff-fffffffffffffff`).

If an issuing party distributes multiple versions of a single CSAF document to different sharing groups, the rules for CSAF modifier (cf. section sec) regarding the generation of the value of `/document/tracking/id` SHALL be applied. This implies that usually the sharing group ID is used as a prefix to the original `/document/tracking/id`.

Sharing Group Name (`name`) of value type `string` with one or more characters contains a human-readable name for the sharing group.

The Sharing Group Name is optional and can be chosen freely by the entity establishing the sharing group. However, the following values are reserved for the conditions below:

- For the Max UUID, the value of `name` SHALL exist and be `Public`.
- For the Nil UUID, the value of `name` SHALL exist and be `No sharing allowed`.

### 3.2.2.5.2 Document Property - Distribution - Text

The Textual description (`text`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters provides a textual description of additional constraints.

*Examples 1:*

```
Copyright 2024, Example Company, All Rights Reserved.
Distribute freely.
Share only on a need-to-know-basis only.
```

### 3.2.2.5.3 Document Property - Distribution - TLP

Traffic Light Protocol (TLP) (`tlp`) of value type `object` with the mandatory property Label (`label`) and the optional property URL (`url`) provides details about the TLP classification of the document.

```
"tlp": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "label": {
      // ...
    },
    "url": {
      // ...
    }
  }
}
```

The Label of TLP (`label`) with value type `string` and `enum` provides the TLP label of the document. Valid values of the `enum` are:

```
AMBER
AMBER+STRICT
CLEAR
GREEN
RED
```

Note: In the TLP specification there are only 4 labels. The part +STRICT is an extension to TLP:AMBER. To simplify the JSON structure, avoid additional business level tests and aid in parsing, consumption and processing, it is provided as a label to be selected instead of having a separate field.

The default value for `label` is `CLEAR`.

Note: This provides the suggested default value for anyone writing CSAF documents as the majority of those are intended to be publicly available.

The URL of TLP version (`url`) with value type `string` with format `uri` provides a URL where to find the textual description of the TLP version which is used in this document. The default value is the URL to the definition by FIRST:

```
https://www.first.org/tlp/
```

*Examples 1:*

```
https://www.us-cert.gov/tlp
https://www.bsi.bund.de/SharedDocs/Downloads/DE/BSI/TLP/merkblatt-tlp.pdf
```

### 3.2.2.6 Document Property - Language

Document language (`lang`) of value type Language Type (`lang_t`) identifies the language used by this document, corresponding to IETF BCP 47 / RFC 5646.

### 3.2.2.7 Document Property - License Expression

License expression (`license_expression`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters contains the SPDX license expression for the CSAF document. It MUST NOT contain a license text. See annex B of [SPDX301] for details. The `DocumentRef` part given in that ABNF MUST NOT be used in CSAF. Any SPDX license identifier not from the official SPDX license identifier list MUST contain a prefix of the form `LicenseRef-<license-inventing-entity>-` where `<license-inventing-entity>` is replaced with a unique name for the entity that provided the database this license identifier was found in. The unique name MAY be a domain name. The same applies for `AdditionRef-` user defined identifiers.

In addition, the following rules apply:

- License identification:
  1. The SPDX License List Version 3.26.0 or later MUST be consulted to identify the appropriate SPDX license identifier or construct an expression based on a SPDX license identifier. Deprecated license identifiers SHOULD NOT be used. SPDX license identifiers that were deprecated before the version listed above MUST NOT be used.
    - > The list is available at <https://spdx.org/licenses/>. > It includes also the exceptions.
  2. If the appropriate license identifier is not found in the SPDX License List or expression been possible to constructed, the license database AboutCode's "ScanCode LicenseDB" MUST be consulted as a next step. License identifiers from this database MUST use the prefix `LicenseRef-scancode-`. > The database is currently available at <https://scancode-licensedb.aboutcode.org/>.  
The construction of a license expression with such an identifier is also allowed.
  3. If the first two steps did not result in an appropriate license identifier or expression and no extant identifier was found, the issuing party SHALL create their own license identifier following the rules above. The license identifier SHOULD contain the version number of the license. The license text MUST be made available through exactly one document note using the category `legal_disclaimer`. The title MUST be `License` for English or an unspecified document language. For any other language, it SHOULD be the language specific translation of that term.
- License similarity:
  - Annex C of [SPDX301] applies.

*Examples 1:*

```
CC-BY-4.0
LicenseRef-www.example.org-Example-CSAF-License-3.0+
LicenseRef-scancode-public-domain
MIT OR any-OSI
```

### 3.2.2.8 Document Property - Notes

Document notes (`notes`) of value type `Notes Type` (`notes_t`) holds notes associated with the whole document.

```
"notes": {
  // ...
},
```

The following combinations of `category` and `title` have a special meaning and MUST be used as stated below:



category	title	content of text
description	Product Description	Contains a description of a product given in the product_tree in regards to field of application and core functionality. This SHOULD be bound to the corresponding product or product group.
general	General Security Recommendations	Contains general advise and security recommendations that are related, generic and might be independently applicable of the content of the CSAF document.
legal_disclaimer	License	Contains the only license text of the document license.
summary	Summary	Contains a short summary of the content of the advisory.

If a note is specific to a product or product group it MUST be bound via the group\_ids respectively product\_ids.

3.2.2.9 Document Property - Publisher

Publisher (publisher) has value type object with the mandatory properties Category (category), Name (name) and Namespace (namespace) and provides information on the publishing entity. The 2 other optional properties are: contact\_details and issuing\_authority.

```
"publisher": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "category": {
      // ...
    },
    "contact_details": {
      // ...
    },
    "issuing_authority": {
      // ...
    },
    "name": {
      // ...
    }
  }
  "namespace": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

3.2.2.9.1 Document Property - Publisher - Category

The Category of publisher (category) of value type string and enum provides information about the category of publisher releasing the document. The valid values are:

- coordinator
- discoverer
- multiplier

other  
translator  
user  
vendor

The value `coordinator` indicates individuals or organizations that manage a single vendor's response or multiple vendors' responses to a vulnerability, a security flaw, or an incident. This includes all Computer Emergency/Incident Response Teams (CERTs/CIRTs) or agents acting on the behalf of a researcher.

The value `discoverer` indicates individuals or organizations that find vulnerabilities or security weaknesses. This includes all manner of researchers.

The value `multiplier` indicates individuals or organizations that use existing CSAF documents or information that could be represented in CSAF, and create their own CSAF documents for distribution to a specific target audience. A single multiplier might have target audiences. > For example, a National CSIRT might create different CSAF documents for the same vulnerability for critical infrastructure companies in different sectors, government agencies, non-critical industry, and the public based on information sharing agreements and threats to the target group.

The creation step can make use of a CSAF modifier that replaces metadata, e.g. the document publisher. Currently, this value includes multipliers, republishers, and forwarders.

The value `translator` indicates individuals or organizations that translate CSAF documents. This includes all manner of language translators, also those who work for the party issuing the original advisory.

The value `other` indicates a catchall for everyone else. Currently this includes editors, reviewers, and miscellaneous contributors.

The value `user` indicates anyone using a vendor's product.

The value `vendor` indicates developers or maintainers of information system products or services. This includes all authoritative product vendors, product security incident response teams (PSIRTs), open source projects as well as product resellers and distributors, including authoritative vendor partners.

#### 3.2.2.9.2 Document Property - Publisher - Contact Details

Contact details (`contact_details`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters provides information on how to contact the publisher, possibly including details such as web sites, email addresses, phone numbers, and postal mail addresses.

*Example 1:*

Example Company can be reached at `contact_us@example.com`, or via our website at `http://example.com`

#### 3.2.2.9.3 Document Property - Publisher - Issuing Authority

Issuing authority (`issuing_authority`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters Provides information about the authority of the issuing party to release the document, in particular, the party's constituency and responsibilities or other obligations.

#### 3.2.2.9.4 Document Property - Publisher - Name

The Name of publisher (`name`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters contains the name of the issuing party.

*Example 1:*

BSI  
Cisco PSIRT  
Siemens ProductCERT

### 3.2.2.9.5 Document Property - Publisher - Namespace

The Namespace of publisher (namespace) of value type string with format uri contains a URL which is under control of the issuing party and can be used as a globally unique identifier for that issuing party. The URL SHALL be normalized.

An issuing party can choose any URL which fulfills the requirements state above. The URL MAY be dereferenceable. If an issuing party has chosen a URL, it SHOULD NOT change. Tools can make use of the combination of /document/publisher/namespace and /document/tracking/id as it identifies a CSAF document globally unique.

If an issuing party decides to change its Namespace it SHOULD reissue all CSAF documents with an incremented (patch) version which has no other changes than:

- the new publisher information
- the updated revision history
- the updated item in /document/references[] which points to the new version of the CSAF document
- an added item in /document/references[] which points to the previous version of the CSAF document (if the URL changed)

*Examples 1:*

```
https://csaf.io
https://www.example.com
```

### 3.2.2.10 Document Property - References

Document references (references) of value type References Type (references\_t) holds a list of references associated with the whole document.

```
"references": {
  // ...
},
```

### 3.2.2.11 Document Property - Source Language

Source language (source\_lang) of value type Language Type (lang\_t) identifies if this copy of the document is a translation then the value of this property describes from which language this document was translated.

The property MUST be present and set for any CSAF document with the value translator in /document/publisher/category. The property SHALL NOT be present if the document was not translated.

If an issuing party publishes a CSAF document with the same content in more than one language, one of these documents SHOULD be deemed the “original”, the other ones SHOULD be considered translations from the “original”. The issuing party can retain its original publisher information including the category. However, other rules defined in the conformance clause “CSAF translator” SHOULD be applied.

### 3.2.2.12 Document Property - Title

Title of this document (title) of value type string with 1 or more characters SHOULD be a canonical name for the document, and sufficiently unique to distinguish it from similar documents.

*Examples 1:*

```
Cisco IPv6 Crafted Packet Denial of Service Vulnerability
Example Company Cross-Site-Scripting Vulnerability in Example Generator
```

### 3.2.2.13 Document Property - Tracking

Tracking (`tracking`) of value type `object` with the six mandatory properties: Current Release Date (`current_release_date`), Identifier (`id`), Initial Release Date (`initial_release_date`), Revision History (`revision_history`), Status (`status`), and Version (`version`) is a container designated to hold all management attributes necessary to track a CSAF document as a whole. The two optional additional properties are Aliases (`aliases`) and Generator (`generator`).

```
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "aliases": {
      // ...
    },
    "current_release_date": {
      // ...
    },
    "generator": {
      // ...
    },
    "id": {
      // ...
    },
    "initial_release_date": {
      // ...
    },
    "revision_history": {
      // ...
    },
    "status": {
      // ...
    },
    "version": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},
```

#### 3.2.2.13.1 Document Property - Tracking - Aliases

Aliases (`aliases`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a `set`) representing Alternate Names contains a list of alternate names for the same document.

```
"aliases": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every such Alternate Name of value type `string` with 1 or more characters specifies a non-empty string that represents a distinct optional alternative ID used to refer to the document.

*Example 1:*

CVE-2019-12345

### 3.2.2.13.2 Document Property - Tracking - Current Release Date

Current release date (`current_release_date`) with value type `string` with format `date-time` holds the date when the current revision of this document was released.

### 3.2.2.13.3 Document Property - Tracking - Generator

Document Generator (`generator`) of value type `object` with mandatory property Engine (`engine`) and optional property Date (`date`) is a container to hold all elements related to the generation of the document. These items will reference when the document was actually created, including the date it was generated and the entity that generated it.

```

"generator": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "date": {
      // ...
    },
    "engine": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},

```

Date of document generation (`date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` SHOULD be the current date that the document was generated. Because documents are often generated internally by a document producer and exist for a nonzero amount of time before being released, this field MAY be different from the Initial Release Date and Current Release Date.

Engine of document generation (`engine`) of value type `object` with mandatory property Engine name (`name`) and optional property Engine version (`version`) contains information about the engine that generated the CSAF document.

```

"engine": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      // ...
    },
    "version": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},

```

Engine name (`name`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters represents the name of the engine that generated the CSAF document.

*Examples 1:*

```

Red Hat rhsa-to-cvrf
Secvisogram
TVCE

```

Engine version (`version`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters contains the version of the engine that generated the CSAF document.

Although it is not formally required, the TC suggests to use a versioning which is compatible with Semantic Versioning as described in the external specification [SemVer]. This could help the end user to identify when CSAF consumers have to be updated.

*Examples 2:*

```
0.6.0
1.0.0-beta+exp.sha.a1c44f85
2
```

### 3.2.2.13.4 Document Property - Tracking - ID

Unique identifier for the document (`id`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters with `pattern` (regular expression):

```
^[\\S](\\.?[\\S])?$
```

Unique identifier for the document holds the Identifier. It SHALL NOT start or end with a white space and SHALL NOT contain a newline sequence.

The ID is a simple label that provides for a wide range of numbering values, types, and schemes. Its value SHOULD be assigned and maintained by the original document issuing authority. It MUST be unique for that organization.

*Examples 1:*

```
Example Company - 2019-YH3234
RHBA-2019:0024
cisco-sa-20190513-secureboot
```

The combination of `/document/publisher/namespace` and `/document/tracking/id` identifies a CSAF document globally unique.

This value is also used to determine the filename for the CSAF document (cf. section 5.1).

### 3.2.2.13.5 Document Property - Tracking - Initial Release Date

Initial release date (`initial_release_date`) with value type `string` with format `date-time` holds the date when this document was first released to the specified target group.

For `TLP: CLEAR` documents, this is usually the timestamp when the document was published. For `TLP: GREEN` and higher, this is the timestamp when it was first made available to the specific group. Note that the initial release date does not change after the initial release even if the document is later on released to a broader audience.

If the timestamp of the initial release date was set incorrectly, it MUST be corrected. This change MUST be tracked with a new entry in the revision history.

### 3.2.2.13.6 Document Property - Tracking - Revision History

The Revision History (`revision_history`) with value type `array` of 1 or more Revision History Entries holds one revision item for each version of the CSAF document, including the initial one.

```
"revision_history": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Each Revision contains all the information elements required to track the evolution of a CSAF document. Revision History Entry items are of value type `object` with the three mandatory properties: Date (`date`), Number (`number`), and Summary (`summary`). In addition, a Revision MAY expose the optional property `legacy_version`.

```
"properties": {
  "date": {
    // ...
  },
  "legacy_version": {
    // ...
  },
  "number": {
    // ...
  },
  "summary": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

The Date of the revision (`date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` states the date of the revision entry.

Legacy version of the revision (`legacy_version`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters contains the version string used in an existing document with the same content.

This SHOULD be used to aid in the mapping between existing (human-readable) documents which might use a different version scheme and CSAF documents with the same content. It is recommended, to use the CSAF revision number to describe the revision history for any new human-readable equivalent.

The Number (`number`) has value type `Version (version_t)`.

The Summary of the revision (`summary`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters holds a single non-empty string representing a short description of the changes.

Each Revision item which has a `number` of `0` or `0.y.z` MUST be removed from the document if the document status is `final`. Versions of the document which are pre-release SHALL NOT have its own revision item. All changes MUST be tracked in the item for the next release version. Build metadata SHOULD NOT be included in the `number` of any revision item.

### 3.2.2.13.7 Document Property - Tracking - Status

Document status (`status`) of value type `string` and `enum` defines the draft status of the document. The value **MUST** be one of the following:

```
draft
final
interim
```

The value `draft` indicates, that this is a pre-release, intended for issuing party's internal use only, or possibly used externally when the party is seeking feedback or indicating its intentions regarding a specific issue.

The value `final` indicates, that the issuing party asserts the content is unlikely to change. "Final" status is an indication only, and does not preclude updates. This **SHOULD** be used if the issuing party expects no, slow or few changes.

The value `interim` indicates, that the issuing party expects rapid updates. This **SHOULD** be used if the expected rate of release for this document is significant higher than for other documents. Once the rate slows down it **MUST** be changed to `final`. This **MAY** be done in a patch version.

This is extremely useful for downstream vendors to constantly inform the end users about ongoing investigation. It can be used as an indication to pull the CSAF document more frequently.

### 3.2.2.13.8 Document Property - Tracking - Version

Version has the value type `Version (version_t)`.

## 3.2.3 Product Tree Property

Product Tree (`product_tree`) has value type `object` with 1 or more properties is a container for all fully qualified product names that can be referenced elsewhere in the document. The properties are Branches (`branches`), Full Product Names (`full_product_names`), Product Groups (`product_groups`), and Relationships (`relationships`).

```
"product_tree": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "branches": {
      // ...
    },
    "full_product_names": {
      // ...
    },
    "product_groups": {
      // ...
    },
    "relationships": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},
```

### 3.2.3.1 Product Tree Property - Branches

List of branches (`branches`) has the value type `branches_t`.



### 3.2.3.2 Product Tree Property - Full Product Names

List of full product names (`full_product_names`) of value type `array` with 1 or more items of type `full_product_name_t` contains a list of full product names.

### 3.2.3.3 Product Tree Property - Product Groups

List of product groups (`product_groups`) of value type `array` with 1 or more items of value type `object` contains a list of product groups.

```
"product_groups": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

The product group items are of value type `object` with the 2 mandatory properties Group ID (`group_id`) and Product IDs (`product_ids`) and the optional Summary (`summary`) property.

```
"properties": {
  "group_id": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "summary": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

The summary of the product group (`summary`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters gives a short, optional description of the group.

*Examples 1:*

```
Products supporting Modbus.
The x64 versions of the operating system.
```

Group ID (`group_id`) has value type Product Group ID (`product_group_id_t`).

List of Product IDs (`product_ids`) of value type `array` with 2 or more unique items of value type Product ID (`product_id_t`) lists the `product_ids` of those products which known as one group in the document.

### 3.2.3.4 Product Tree Property - Relationships

List of relationships (relationships) of value type array with 1 or more items contains a list of relationships.

```
"relationships": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

The Relationship item is of value type object and has four mandatory properties: Relationship category (`category`), Full Product Name (`full_product_name`), Product Reference (`product_reference`), and Relates to Product Reference (`relates_to_product_reference`). The Relationship item establishes a link between two existing `full_product_name_t` elements, allowing the document producer to define a combination of two products that form a new `full_product_name` entry.

```
"properties": {
  "category": {
    // ...
  },
  "full_product_name": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_reference": {
    // ...
  },
  "relates_to_product_reference": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

The situation where a need for declaring a Relationship arises, is given when a product is e.g. vulnerable only when installed together with another, or to describe operating system components.

Relationship category (`category`) of value type `string` and `enum` defines the category of relationship for the referenced component. The valid values are:

```
default_component_of
external_component_of
installed_on
installed_with
optional_component_of
```

The value `default_component_of` indicates that the entity labeled with one Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0001) is a default component of an entity with another Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0002). These Product IDs SHOULD NOT be identical to provide minimal redundancy.

The value `external_component_of` indicates that the entity labeled with one Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0001) is an external component of an entity with another Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0002). These Product IDs SHOULD NOT be identical to provide minimal redundancy.

The value `installed_on` indicates that the entity labeled with one Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0001) is installed on a platform entity with another Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0002). These Product IDs SHOULD NOT be identical to provide minimal redundancy.

The value `installed_with` indicates that the entity labeled with one Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0001) is installed alongside an entity with another Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0002). These Product IDs SHOULD NOT be identical to provide minimal redundancy.

The value `optional_component_of` indicates that the entity labeled with one Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0001) is an optional component of an entity with another Product ID (e.g. CSAFPID-0002). These Product IDs SHOULD NOT be identical to provide minimal redundancy.

Full Product Name (`full_product_name`) of value type Full Product Name Type (`full_product_name_t`).

Product Reference (`product_reference`) of value type Product ID (`product_id_t`) holds a Product ID that refers to the Full Product Name element, which is referenced as the first element of the relationship.

Relates to Product Reference (`relates_to_product_reference`) of value type Product ID (`product_id_t`) holds a Product ID that refers to the Full Product Name element, which is referenced as the second element of the relationship.

*Examples 1:*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070601",
      "name": "Cisco AnyConnect Secure Mobility Client 4.9.04053"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070602",
      "name": "Microsoft Windows"
    }
  ],
  "relationships": [
    {
      "product_reference": "CSAFPID-908070601",
      "category": "installed_on",
      "relates_to_product_reference": "CSAFPID-908070602",
      "full_product_name": {
        "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070603",
        "name": "Cisco AnyConnect Secure Mobility Client 4.9.04053 installed on Micro"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

The product Cisco AnyConnect Secure Mobility Client 4.9.04053" (Product ID: CSAFPID-908070601) and the product Microsoft Windows (Product ID: CSAFPID-908070602) form together a new product with the separate Product ID CSAFPID-908070603. The latter one can be used to refer to that combination in other parts of the CSAF document. In the preceding example 1, it might be the case that Cisco AnyConnect Secure Mobility Client 4.9.04053" is only vulnerable when installed on Microsoft Windows.

### 3.2.4 Vulnerabilities Property

Vulnerabilities (`vulnerabilities`) of value type `array` with 1 or more objects representing vulnerabilities and providing 1 or more properties represents a list of all relevant vulnerability information items.

```
"vulnerabilities": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

The Vulnerability item of value type `object` with 1 or more properties is a container for the aggregation of all fields that are related to a single vulnerability in the document. Any vulnerability MAY provide the optional properties Acknowledgments (`acknowledgments`), Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE) (`cve`), Common Weakness Enumeration (CWE) (`cwes`), Disclosure Date (`disclosure_date`), Discovery Date (`discovery_date`), List of first known exploitation dates (`first_known_exploitation_dates`), Flags (`flags`), IDs (`ids`), Involvements (`involvements`), Metrics (`metrics`), Notes (`notes`), Product Status (`product_status`), References (`references`), Remediations (`remediations`), Threats (`threats`), and Title (`title`).

```
"properties": {
  "acknowledgments": {
    // ...
  },
  "cve": {
    // ...
  },
  "cwes": {
    // ...
  },
  "disclosure_date": {
    // ...
  },
  "discovery_date": {
    // ...
  },
  "first_known_exploitation_dates": {
    // ...
  },
  "flags": {
    // ...
  },
  "ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "involvements": {
    // ...
  },
  "metrics": {
    // ...
  },
  "notes": {
```

```

    // ...
  },
  "product_status": {
    // ...
  },
  "references": {
    // ...
  },
  "remediations": {
    // ...
  },
  "threats": {
    // ...
  },
  "title": {
    // ...
  }
}

```

#### 3.2.4.1 Vulnerabilities Property - Acknowledgments

Vulnerability acknowledgments (`acknowledgments`) of value type `Acknowledgments Type` (`acknowledgments_t`) contains a list of acknowledgment elements associated with this vulnerability item.

```

"acknowledgments": {
  // ...
},

```

#### 3.2.4.2 Vulnerabilities Property - CVE

CVE (`cve`) of value type `string` with `pattern` (regular expression):

```
^CVE-[0-9]{4}-[0-9]{4,}$
```

holds the MITRE standard Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE) tracking number for the vulnerability.

#### 3.2.4.3 Vulnerabilities Property - CWEs

List of CWEs (`cwes`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a set) of value type `object` contains a list of CWEs.

```

"cwes": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},

```

It is expected that the list of CWEs is ordered from the most specific weakness ID to the least specific one.

Every CWE item of value type `object` with the 3 mandatory properties Weakness ID (`id`), Weakness Name (`name`), CWE version (`version`) holds the MITRE standard Common Weakness Enumeration (CWE) for the weakness associated. For more information cf. [CWE].

```

"properties": {
  "id": {
    // ...
  },
  "name": {
    // ...
  },
  "version": {
    // ...
  }
}

```

The Weakness ID (id) has value type `string` with pattern (regular expression):

```
^CWE-[1-9]\\d{0,5}$
```

It holds the ID for the weakness associated.

*Examples 1:*

```

CWE-22
CWE-352
CWE-79

```

The Weakness name (name) has value type `string` of 1 or more characters with pattern (regular expression):

```
^[^\\s\\-_\\.](.*[^\\s\\-_\\.])?$
```

The Weakness name holds the full name of the weakness as given in the CWE specification.

*Examples 2:*

```

Cross-Site Request Forgery (CSRF)
Improper Limitation of a Pathname to a Restricted Directory ('Path Traversal')
Improper Neutralization of Input During Web Page Generation ('Cross-site Scripting')

```

The CWE version (version) has value type `string` with pattern (regular expression):

```
^[1-9]\\d*\\.([0-9]|([1-9]\\d+))(\\.\\d+)?$
```

It holds the version string of the CWE specification this weakness was extracted from. When creating or modifying a CSAF document, the latest published version of the CWE specification SHOULD be used.

*Examples 3:*

```

"1.0",
"3.4.1",
"4.0",
"4.11",
"4.12"

```

#### 3.2.4.4 Vulnerabilities Property - Disclosure Date

Disclosure date (`disclosure_date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` holds the date and time the vulnerability was originally disclosed to the public.

For vulnerabilities not yet disclosed to the public, a disclosure date in the future SHOULD indicate the intended date for disclosure of the vulnerability. This is also sometimes called embargo date. As disclosure dates may change during a vulnerability disclosure process, an issuing party SHOULD produce an updated CSAF document to confirm that the vulnerability was in fact disclosed to the public at that time or update the `disclosure_date` with the new intended date in the future.

#### 3.2.4.5 Vulnerabilities Property - Discovery Date

Discovery date (`discovery_date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` holds the date and time the vulnerability was originally discovered.

#### 3.2.4.6 Vulnerabilities Property - First Known Exploitation Dates

List of first known exploitation dates (`first_known_exploitation_dates`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a set) of value type `object` contains a list of dates of first known exploitations.

```
"first_known_exploitation_dates": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every First known exploitation date item of value type `object` with the 2 mandatory properties `Date of the information (date)` and `Date of the exploitation (exploitation_date)` holds at least 3 properties and contains information on when this vulnerability was first known to be exploited in the wild in the products specified. At least one of the optional elements `Group IDs (group_ids)` and `Product IDs (product_ids)` MUST be present to state for which products or product groups this date is applicable.

This information can be helpful to determine the risk of compromise. It can also be used to provide an indication for the time frame to be considered in a threat hunt for the exploitation this vulnerability.

```
"properties": {
  "date": {
    // ...
  },
  "exploitation_date": {
    // ...
  },
  "group_ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_ids": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

Date of the information (`date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` contains the date when the information was last updated.

Date of the exploitation (`exploitation_date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` contains the date when the exploitation happened.

Different document issuers might have different knowledge about exploitations in the wild that happened. Therefore, the `exploitation_date` can differ.

Group IDs (`group_ids`) are of value type Product Groups (`product_groups_t`) and contain a list of Product Groups the current first known exploitation date item applies to.

Product IDs (`product_ids`) are of value type Products (`products_t`) and contain a list of Products the current first known exploitation date item applies to.

### 3.2.4.7 Vulnerabilities Property - Flags

List of flags (`flags`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a set) of value type `object` contains a list of machine readable flags.

```
"flags": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every Flag item of value type `object` with the mandatory property Label (`label`) contains product specific information in regard to this vulnerability as a single machine readable flag. For example, this could be a machine readable justification code why a product is not affected. At least one of the optional elements Group IDs (`group_ids`) and Product IDs (`product_ids`) MUST be present to state for which products or product groups this flag is applicable.

These flags enable the receiving party to automate the selection of actions to take.

In addition, any Flag item MAY provide the three optional properties Date (`date`), Group IDs (`group_ids`) and Product IDs (`product_ids`).

```
"properties": {
  "date": {
    // ...
  },
  "group_ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "label": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_ids": {
    // ...
  }
}
```



Date of the flag (`date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` contains the date when assessment was done or the flag was assigned.

Group IDs (`group_ids`) are of value type `Product Groups (product_groups_t)` and contain a list of `Product Groups` the current flag item applies to.

Label of the flag (`label`) of value type `string` and `enum` specifies the machine readable label. Valid `enum` values are:

```
component_not_present
inline_mitigations_already_exist
vulnerable_code_cannot_be_controlled_by_adversary
vulnerable_code_not_in_execute_path
vulnerable_code_not_present
```

The given values reflect the VEX not affected justifications. See [VEX-Justification] for more details. The values **MUST** be used as follows:

- `component_not_present`: The software is not affected because the vulnerable component is not in the product.
- `vulnerable_code_not_present`: The product is not affected because the code underlying the vulnerability is not present in the product. > Unlike `component_not_present`, the component in question is present, but for whatever reason (e.g. compiler options) > the specific code causing the vulnerability is not present in the component.
- `vulnerable_code_cannot_be_controlled_by_adversary`: The vulnerable component is present, and the component contains the vulnerable code. However, vulnerable code is used in such a way that an attacker cannot mount any anticipated attack.
- `vulnerable_code_not_in_execute_path`: The affected code is not reachable through the execution of the code, including non-anticipated states of the product. > Components that are neither used nor executed by the product.
- `inline_mitigations_already_exist`: Built-in inline controls or mitigations prevent an adversary from leveraging the vulnerability.

Product IDs (`product_ids`) are of value type `Products (products_t)` and contain a list of `Products` the current flag item applies to.

#### 3.2.4.8 Vulnerabilities Property - IDs

List of IDs (`ids`) of value type `array` with one or more unique ID items of value type `object` represents a list of unique labels or tracking IDs for the vulnerability (if such information exists).

```
"ids": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every ID item of value type `object` with the two mandatory properties `System Name (system_name)` and `Text (text)` contains a single unique label or tracking ID for the vulnerability.

```
"properties": {
  "system_name": {
    // ...
  },
  "text": {
```

```

    // ...
  }
}

```

System name (`system_name`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters indicates the name of the vulnerability tracking or numbering system.

*Examples 1:*

```

Cisco Bug ID
GitHub Issue

```

Text (`text`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters is unique label or tracking ID for the vulnerability (if such information exists).

*Examples 2:*

```

CSCso66472
oasis-tcs/csaf#210

```

General examples may include an identifier from a vulnerability tracking system that is available to customers, such as:

- a Cisco bug ID,
- a GitHub Issue number,
- an ID from a Bugzilla system, or
- an ID from a public vulnerability database such as the X-Force Database.

The ID MAY be a vendor-specific value but is not to be used to publish the CVE tracking numbers (MITRE standard Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures), as these are specified inside the dedicated CVE element.

### 3.2.4.9 Vulnerabilities Property - Involvements

List of involvements (`involvements`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a set) of value type `object` contains a list of involvements.

```

"involvements": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},

```

Every Involvement item of value type `object` with the 2 mandatory properties `Party` (`party`), `Status` (`status`) and the 5 optional properties `Party contact information` (`contact`), `Date of involvement` (`date`), `Group IDs` (`group_ids`), `Product IDs` (`product_ids`), and `Summary` (`summary`) is a container that allows the document producers to comment on the level of involvement (or engagement) of themselves (or third parties) in the vulnerability identification, scoping, and remediation process. It can also be used to convey the disclosure timeline. The ordered tuple of the values of `party` and `date` (if present) SHALL be unique within `involvements`.

```

"properties": {
  "contact": {
    // ...
  },
  "date": {
    // ...
  },
  "group_ids" {
    // ...
  },
  "party": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "status": {
    // ...
  },
  "summary": {
    // ...
  }
}

```

Party contact information (`contact`) contains the contact information of the party that was used in this state.

In many cases, that could be an email address.

Date of involvement (`date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` holds the date and time of the involvement entry.

Group IDs (`group_ids`) are of value type `Product Groups (product_groups_t)` and contain a list of `Product Groups` the current involvement item applies to.

Party category (`party`) of value type `string` and `enum` defines the category of the involved party. Valid values are:

```

coordinator
discoverer
other
user
vendor

```

These values follow the same definitions as given for the publisher category (cf. section 3.2.2.9.1).

Product IDs (`product_ids`) are of value type `Products (products_t)` and contain a list of `Products` the current involvement item applies to.

Party status (`status`) of value type `string` and `enum` defines contact status of the involved party. Valid values are:

```

completed
contact_attempted
disputed
in_progress
not_contacted
open

```

Each status is mutually exclusive - only one status is valid for a particular vulnerability at a particular time. As the vulnerability ages, a party's involvement could move from state to state. However, in many cases, a document producer may choose not to issue CSAF documents at each state, or simply omit this element altogether. It is recommended, however, that vendors that issue CSAF documents indicating an open or in-progress involvement SHOULD eventually expect to issue a document containing one of the statuses `disputed` or `completed` as the latest one.

The two vulnerability involvement status states, `contact_attempted` and `not_contacted` are intended for use by document producers other than vendors (such as research or coordinating entities).

The value `completed` indicates that the party asserts that investigation of the vulnerability is complete. No additional information, fixes, or documentation from the party about the vulnerability should be expected to be released.

The value `contact_attempted` indicates that the document producer attempted to contact the party.

The value `disputed` indicates that the party disputes the vulnerability report in its entirety. This status SHOULD be used when the party believes that a vulnerability report regarding a product is completely inaccurate (that there is no real underlying security vulnerability) or that the technical issue being reported has no security implications.

The value `in_progress` indicates that some hotfixes, permanent fixes, mitigations, workarounds, or patches may have been made available by the party, but more information or fixes may be released in the future. The use of this status by a vendor indicates that future information from the vendor about the vulnerability is to be expected.

The value `not_contacted` indicates that the document producer has not attempted to make contact with the party.

The value `open` is the default status. It doesn't indicate anything about the vulnerability remediation effort other than the fact that the party has acknowledged awareness of the vulnerability report. The use of this status by a vendor indicates that future updates from the vendor about the vulnerability are to be expected.

Summary of involvement (`summary`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters contains additional context regarding what is going on.

#### 3.2.4.10 Vulnerabilities Property - Metrics

List of metrics (`metrics`) of value type `array` with 1 or more unique items (a set) of value type `object` Contains metric objects for the current vulnerability.

```
"metrics": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every Metric item of value type `object` with the mandatory properties `content` and `products` and the optional property `source` contains all metadata about the metric including products it applies to and the source and the content itself.

```
"properties": {
  "content": {
    // ...
  },
  "products": {
    // ...
  },
  "source": {
```

```

    // ...
  }
}

```

#### 3.2.4.10.1 Vulnerabilities Property - Metrics - Content

Content (content) of value type object with the optional properties CVSS v2 (cvss\_v2), CVSS v3 (cvss\_v3), CVSS v4 (cvss\_v4), EPSS (epss), and SSVC v1 (ssvc\_v1) specifies information about (at least one) metric or score for the given products regarding the current vulnerability. A Content object has at least 1 property.

```

"properties": {
  "cvss_v2": {
    // ...
  },
  "cvss_v3": {
    "oneOf": [
      // ...
    ]
  },
  "cvss_v4": {
    // ...
  },
  "epss": {
    // ...
  },
  "ssvc_v1": {
    // ....
  }
}

```

The property CVSS v2 (cvss\_v2) holding a CVSS v2.0 value abiding by the schema at <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v2.0.json>.

The property CVSS v3 (cvss\_v3) holding a CVSS v3.x value abiding by one of the schemas at <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v3.0.json> or <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v3.1.json>.

The property CVSS v4 (cvss\_v4) holding a CVSS v4.0 value abiding by the schema at <https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v4.0.json>.

The property SSVC v1 (ssvc\_v1) holding an SSVC Decision Point Value Selection v1.0.1 value abiding by the schema at [https://certcc.github.io/SSVC/data/schema/v1/Decision\\_Point\\_Value\\_Selection-1-0-1.schema.json](https://certcc.github.io/SSVC/data/schema/v1/Decision_Point_Value_Selection-1-0-1.schema.json).

The property EPSS (epss) of value type object with the 3 mandatory properties Percentile (percentile), Probability (probability) and EPSS timestamp (timestamp) contains the EPSS data.

```

"properties": {
  "percentile": {
    // ...
  },
  "probability": {
    // ...
  },
  "timestamp": {

```

```
    // ...
  }
}
```

Percentile (`percentile`) has value type `string` with `pattern` (regular expression):

`^(([0]\.\.([0-9]))+)|([1]\.\.([0]+)))$`

The value contains the rank ordering of probabilities from highest to lowest.

Probability (`probability`) with `pattern` (regular expression):

`^(([0]\.\.([0-9]))+)|([1]\.\.([0]+)))$`

The value contains the likelihood that any exploitation activity for this Vulnerability is being observed in the 30 days following the given timestamp.

EPSS timestamp (`timestamp`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` holds the date and time the EPSS value was recorded.

3.2.4.10.2 Vulnerabilities Property - Metrics - Products

Product IDs (`products`) of value type `products_t` with 1 or more items indicates for which products the given content applies. A metric object SHOULD reflect the associated product’s status (for example, a fixed product no longer contains a vulnerability and should have a CVSS score of 0, or simply no score listed; the known affected versions of that product can list the vulnerability score as it applies to them).

3.2.4.10.3 Vulnerabilities Property - Metrics - Source

Source (`source`) of value type `string` with format `uri` contains the URL of the source that originally determined the metric. If no source is given, then the metric was assigned by the document author.

For example, this could point to the vendor advisory, discoverer blog post, a multiplier’s assessment or other sources that provide metric information.

3.2.4.11 Vulnerabilities Property - Notes

Vulnerability notes (`notes`) of value type `Notes Type (notes_t)` holds notes associated with this vulnerability item.

```
"notes": {
  // ...
},
```

The following combinations of `category` and `title` have a special meaning and MUST be used as stated below:

category	title	content of text
description	CVE Description	Contains the official and unchanged CVE description for this specific vulnerability.
description	Preconditions	Contains a description of the preconditions that have to be fulfilled to be able to exploit the vulnerability, e.g. user account or physical access.

category	title	content of text
summary	Vulnerability Summary	Contains a summary of the vulnerability which is not the official CVE description.

If a note is specific to a product or product group it MUST be bound via the `group_ids` respectively `product_ids`.

3.2.4.12 Vulnerabilities Property - Product Status

Product status (`product_status`) of value type `object` with 1 or more properties contains different lists of `product_ids` which provide details on the status of the referenced product related to the current vulnerability. The nine defined properties are First affected (`first_affected`), First fixed (`first_fixed`), Fixed (`fixed`), Known affected (`known_affected`), Known not affected (`known_not_affected`), Last affected (`last_affected`), Recommended (`recommended`), Under investigation (`under_investigation`) and Unknown (`unknown`) are all of value type `Products` (`products_t`).

```
"product_status": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "first_affected": {
      // ...
    },
    "first_fixed": {
      // ...
    },
    "fixed": {
      // ...
    },
    "known_affected": {
      // ...
    },
    "known_not_affected": {
      // ...
    },
    "last_affected": {
      // ...
    },
    "recommended": {
      // ...
    },
    "under_investigation": {
      // ...
    },
    "unknown": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},
```

First affected (`first_affected`) of value type `Products` (`products_t`) represents that these are the first versions of the releases known to be affected by the vulnerability.

First fixed (`first_fixed`) of value type `Products` (`products_t`) represents that these versions contain the first fix for the vulnerability but may not be the recommended fixed versions.

Fixed (`fixed`) of value type `Products (products_t)` represents that these versions contain a fix for the vulnerability but may not be the recommended fixed versions.

Known affected (`known_affected`) of value type `Products (products_t)` represents that these versions are known to be affected by the vulnerability. Actions are recommended to remediate or address this vulnerability.

This could include for instance learning more about the vulnerability and context, and/or making a risk-based decision to patch or apply defense-in-depth measures. See `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations`, `/vulnerabilities[]/notes` and `/vulnerabilities[]/threats` for more details.

Known not affected (`known_not_affected`) of value type `Products (products_t)` represents that these versions are known not to be affected by the vulnerability. No remediation is required regarding this vulnerability.

This could for instance be because the code referenced in the vulnerability is not present, not exposed, compensating controls exist, or other factors. See `/vulnerabilities[]/flags` and `/vulnerabilities[]/threats` in category `impact` for more details.

Last affected (`last_affected`) of value type `Products (products_t)` represents that these are the last versions in a release train known to be affected by the vulnerability. Subsequently released versions would contain a fix for the vulnerability.

Recommended (`recommended`) of value type `Products (products_t)` represents that these versions have a fix for the vulnerability and are the vendor-recommended versions for fixing the vulnerability.

Under investigation (`under_investigation`) of value type `Products (products_t)` represents that it is not known yet whether these versions are or are not affected by the vulnerability. However, it is still under investigation - the result will be provided in a later release of the document.

Unknown (`unknown`) of value type `Products (products_t)` represents that it is not known whether these versions are or are not affected by the vulnerability. There is also no investigation and therefore the status might never be determined.

The individual properties form the following product status groups:

- Affected:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/last_affected[]
```

- Not affected:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_not_affected[]
```

- Fixed:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_fixed[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/fixed[]
```

- Under investigation:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/under_investigation[]
```

- Unknown:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/unknown[]
```

As the aforementioned product status groups contradict each other, the sets formed by the contradicting groups within one vulnerability item **MUST** be pairwise disjoint.



Note: An issuer might recommend (/vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/recommended) a product version from any group - also from the affected group, i.e. if it was discovered that fixed versions introduce a more severe vulnerability.

### 3.2.4.13 Vulnerabilities Property - References

Vulnerability references (references) of value type References Type (references\_t) holds a list of references associated with this vulnerability item.

```
"references": {
  // ...
},
```

### 3.2.4.14 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations

List of remediations (remediations) of value type array with 1 or more Remediation items of value type object contains a list of remediations.

```
"remediations": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every Remediation item of value type object with the 2 mandatory properties Category (category) and Details (details) specifies details on how to handle (and presumably, fix) a vulnerability. At least one of the optional elements Group IDs (group\_ids) and Product IDs (product\_ids) MUST be present to state for which products or product groups this remediation is applicable.

In addition, any Remediation MAY expose the six optional properties Date (date), Entitlements (entitlements), Group IDs (group\_ids), Product IDs (product\_ids), Restart required (restart\_required), and URL (url).

```
"properties": {
  "category": {
    // ...
  },
  "date": {
    // ...
  },
  "details": {
    // ...
  },
  "entitlements": {
    // ...
  },
  "group_ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_ids": {
    // ...
  },
},
```

```

    "restart_required": {
      // ...
    },
    "url": {
      // ...
    }
  }
}

```

#### 3.2.4.14.1 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - Category

Category of the remediation (`category`) of value type `string` and `enum` specifies the category which this remediation belongs to. Valid values are:

```

fix_planned
mitigation
no_fix_planned
none_available
optional_patch
vendor_fix
workaround

```

The value `workaround` indicates that the remediation contains information about a configuration or specific deployment scenario that can be used to avoid exposure to the vulnerability. There MAY be none, one, or more workarounds available. This is typically the “first line of defense” against a new vulnerability before a mitigation or vendor fix has been issued or even discovered.

The value `mitigation` indicates that the remediation contains information about a configuration or deployment scenario that helps to reduce the risk of the vulnerability but that does not resolve the vulnerability on the affected product. Mitigations MAY include using devices or access controls external to the affected product. Mitigations MAY or MAY NOT be issued by the original author of the affected product, and they MAY or MAY NOT be officially sanctioned by the document producer.

The value `vendor_fix` indicates that the remediation contains information about an official fix that is issued by the original author of the affected product. Unless otherwise noted, it is assumed that this fix fully resolves the vulnerability.

The value `optional_patch` indicates that the remediation contains information about a patch that is issued by the original author of the affected product. Its application is not necessary, but might be desired by the user, e.g. to calm a security scanner by updating a dependency to a fixed version even though the dependency in the affected version was used in the product in a way that the product itself was not affected. Unless otherwise noted, it is assumed that this does not change the state regarding the vulnerability.

This is sometimes also referred to as a “regulatory compliance patch”.

The value `none_available` indicates that there is currently no fix or other remediation available. The text in field `details` SHOULD contain details about why there is no fix or other remediation.

The value `fix_planned` indicates that there is a fix for the vulnerability planned but not yet ready. An issuing party might choose to use this category to announce that a fix is currently developed. The text in field `details` SHOULD contain details including a date when a customer can expect the fix to be ready and distributed.

The value `no_fix_planned` indicates that there is no fix for the vulnerability and it is not planned to provide one at any time. This is often the case when a product has been orphaned, declared end-of-life, or otherwise deprecated. The text in field `details` SHOULD contain details about why there will be no fix issued.

Some category values contradict each other and thus are mutually exclusive per product. Therefore, such a combination MUST NOT be used in the list of remediations for the same product. This is independent from whether the product

is referenced directly or indirectly through a product group. The following tables shows the allowed and prohibited combinations:

category value	workaroun	mitigatio	vendor_f	optional_pa	none_availa	fix_plann	no_fix_planne
workaround	allowed	allowed	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	allowed	allowed
mitigation	allowed	allowed	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	allowed	allowed
vendor_fix	allowed	allowed	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited
optional_patch	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited
none_available	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited	allowed	prohibited	prohibited
fix_planned	allowed	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited	allowed	prohibited
no_fix_planned	allowed	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited	prohibited	allowed

Some category values contradict certain product status groups. Therefore, such a combination MUST NOT exist in a vulnerability item for the same product. This is independent from whether the product is referenced directly or indirectly through a product group. The following tables shows the allowed, discouraged and prohibited combinations:

category value	Affected	Not Affected	Fixed	Under Investigation	Unknown	Recommended
workaround	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	discouraged	discouraged	allowed
mitigation	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	discouraged	discouraged	allowed
vendor_fix	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	discouraged	discouraged	allowed
optional_patch	prohibited	allowed	discouraged	allowed	allowed	allowed
none_available	allowed	prohibited	prohibited	allowed	allowed	allowed
fix_planned	allowed	discouraged	prohibited	discouraged	discouraged	allowed
no_fix_planned	allowed	discouraged	prohibited	allowed	allowed	allowed

3.2.4.14.2 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - Date

Date of the remediation (date) of value type string with format date-time contains the date from which the remediation is available.

3.2.4.14.3 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - Details

Details of the remediation (details) of value type string with 1 or more characters contains a thorough human-readable discussion of the remediation.

3.2.4.14.4 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - Entitlements

List of entitlements (entitlements) of value type array with 1 or more items of type Entitlement of the remediation as string with 1 or more characters contains a list of entitlements.

```
"entitlements": {
  // ....
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every Entitlement of the remediation contains any possible vendor-defined constraints for obtaining fixed software or hardware that fully resolves the vulnerability.

#### 3.2.4.14.5 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - Group IDs

Group IDs (`group_ids`) are of value type Product Groups (`product_groups_t`) and contain a list of Product Groups the current remediation item applies to.

#### 3.2.4.14.6 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - Product IDs

Product IDs (`product_ids`) are of value type Products (`products_t`) and contain a list of Products the current remediation item applies to.

#### 3.2.4.14.7 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - Restart Required

Restart required by remediation (`restart_required`) of value type object with the 1 mandatory property Category (`category`) and the optional property Details (`details`) provides information on category of restart is required by this remediation to become effective.

```
"restart_required": {
  // ...
  "properties": {
    "category": {
      // ...
    }
    "details": {
      // ...
    }
  }
},
```

Category of restart (`category`) of value type string and enum specifies what category of restart is required by this remediation to become effective. Valid values are:

```
connected
dependencies
machine
none
parent
service
system
vulnerable_component
zone
```

The values MUST be used as follows:

- `none`: No restart required.
- `vulnerable_component`: Only the vulnerable component (as given by the elements of `product_ids` or `group_ids` in the current remediation item) needs to be restarted.
- `service`: The vulnerable component and the background service used by the vulnerable component need to be restarted.
- `parent`: The vulnerable component and its parent process need to be restarted. This could be the case if the parent process has no build-in way to restart the vulnerable component or process values / context is only given at the start of the parent process.
- `dependencies`: The vulnerable component and all components which require the vulnerable component to work need to be restarted. This could be the case e.g. for a core service of a software.

- **connected**: The vulnerable component and all components connected (via network or any type of inter-process communication) to the vulnerable component need to be restarted.
- **machine**: The machine on which the vulnerable component is installed on needs to be restarted. This is the value which **SHOULD** be used if an OS needs to be restarted. It is typically the case for OS upgrades.
- **zone**: The security zone in which the machine resides on which the vulnerable component is installed needs to be restarted. This value might be useful for a remediation if no patch is available. If the malware can be wiped out by restarting the infected machines but the infection spreads fast the controlled shutdown of all machines at the same time and restart afterwards can leave one with a clean system.
- **system**: The whole system which the machine resides on which the vulnerable component is installed needs to be restarted. This **MAY** include multiple security zones. This could be the case for a major system upgrade in an ICS system or a protocol change.

Additional restart information (**details**) of value type **string** with 1 or more characters provides additional information for the restart. This can include details on procedures, scope or impact.

#### 3.2.4.14.8 Vulnerabilities Property - Remediations - URL

URL (**url**) of value type **string** with format **uri** contains the URL where to obtain the remediation.

#### 3.2.4.15 Vulnerabilities Property - Threats

List of threats (**threats**) of value type **array** with 1 or more items of value type **object** contains information about a vulnerability that can change with time.

```
"threats": {
  // ...
  "items": {
    // ...
  }
},
```

Every Threat item of value type **object** with the two mandatory properties Category (**category**) and Details (**details**) contains the vulnerability kinetic information. This information can change as the vulnerability ages and new information becomes available. In addition, any Threat item **MAY** expose the three optional properties Date (**date**), Group IDs (**group\_ids**), and Product IDs (**product\_ids**).

```
"properties": {
  "category": {
    // ...
  }
  "date": {
    // ...
  },
  "details": {
    // ...
  },
  "group_ids": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_ids": {
    // ...
  }
}
```

Category of the threat (`category`) of value type `string` and `enum` categorizes the threat according to the rules of the specification. Valid values are:

```
exploit_status
impact
target_set
```

The value `exploit_status` indicates that the `details` field contains a description of the degree to which an exploit for the vulnerability is known. This knowledge can range from information privately held among a very small group to an issue that has been described to the public at a major conference or is being widely exploited globally. For consistency and simplicity, this section can be a mirror image of the CVSS `exploitMaturity` (v4.0), respectively `exploitCodeMaturity` (v3.1 and v3.0) or `exploitability` (v2.0) metric. However, it can also contain a more contextual status, such as “Weaponized” or “Functioning Code”.

The value `impact` indicates that the `details` field contains an assessment of the impact on the user or the target set if the vulnerability is successfully exploited or a description why it cannot be exploited. If applicable, for consistency and simplicity, this section can be a textual summary of the three CVSS impact metrics. These metrics measure how a vulnerability detracts from the three core security properties of an information system: Confidentiality, Integrity, and Availability.

The value `target_set` indicates that the `details` field contains a description of the currently known victim population in whatever terms are appropriate. Such terms MAY include: operating system platform, types of products, user segments, and geographic distribution.

Date of the threat (`date`) of value type `string` with format `date-time` contains the date when the assessment was done or the threat appeared.

Details of the threat (`details`) of value type `string` with 1 or more characters represents a thorough human-readable discussion of the threat.

Group IDs (`group_ids`) are of value type Product Groups (`product_groups_t`) and contain a list of Product Groups the current threat item applies to.

Product IDs (`product_ids`) are of value type Products (`products_t`) and contain a list of Products the current threat item applies to.

#### 3.2.4.16 Vulnerabilities Property - Title

Title (`title`) has value type `string` with 1 or more characters and gives the document producer the ability to apply a canonical name or title to the vulnerability.

## 4 Profiles

CSAF documents do not have many required fields as they can be used for different purposes. To ensure a common understanding of which fields are required in a given use case the standard defines profiles. Each subsection describes such a profile by describing necessary content for that specific use case and providing insights into its purpose. The value of `/document/category` is used to identify a CSAF document's profile. The following rules apply:

1. Each CSAF document **MUST** conform the **CSAF Base** profile.
2. Each profile extends the base profile "CSAF Base" - directly or indirect through another profile from the standard - by making additional fields from the standard mandatory. A profile can always add, but never subtract nor overwrite requirements defined in the profile it extends.
3. Any optional field from the standard can also be added to a CSAF document which conforms with a profile without breaking conformance with the profile. One and only exempt is when the profile requires not to have a certain set of fields.
4. Values of `/document/category` starting with `csaf_` are reserved for existing, past, upcoming and future profiles defined in the CSAF standard.
5. Values of `/document/category` starting with `csaf_deprecated_` are used for official profiles that are marked deprecated. Those profiles are mostly there to allow backwards compatibility, e.g. with older CSAF versions. Therefore, they **SHOULD NOT** be used for newly created CSAF documents.
6. Values of `/document/category` that do not match any of the values defined in section 4 of this standard **SHALL** be validated against the "CSAF Base" profile.
7. Local or private profiles **MAY** exist and tools **MAY** choose to support them.
8. If an official profile and a private profile exists, tools **MUST** validate against the official one from the standard.

### 4.1 Profile 1: CSAF Base

This profile defines the default required fields for any CSAF document. Therefore, it is a "catch all" for CSAF documents that do not satisfy any other profile. Furthermore, it is the foundation all other profiles are build on.

A CSAF document **SHALL** fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile "CSAF Base":

- The following elements **MUST** exist and be valid:
  - `/schema`
  - `/document/category`
  - `/document/csaf_version`
  - `/document/distribution/tlp/label`
  - `/document/publisher/category`
  - `/document/publisher/name`
  - `/document/publisher/namespace`
  - `/document/title`
  - `/document/tracking/current_release_date`
  - `/document/tracking/id`
  - `/document/tracking/initial_release_date`
  - `/document/tracking/revision_history[]/date`
  - `/document/tracking/revision_history[]/number`
  - `/document/tracking/revision_history[]/summary`
  - `/document/tracking/status`
  - `/document/tracking/version`
- The value of `/document/category` **SHALL NOT** be equal to any value that is intended to only be used by another profile nor to the (case insensitive) name of any other profile from the standard. This does not differentiate between underscore, dash or whitespace. To explicitly select the use of this profile the value `csaf_base` **SHOULD** be used.



Neither `CSAF Security Advisory` nor `csaf security advisory` are valid values for `/document/category`.

An issuing party might choose to set `/document/publisher/name` in front of a value that is intended to only be used by another profile to state that the CSAF document does not use the profile associated with this value. In this case, the (case insensitive) string “CSAF” MUST be removed from the value. This SHOULD be done if the issuing party is unable or unwilling to use the value `csaf_base`, e.g. due to legal or cooperate identity reasons.

Both values `Example Company Security Advisory` and `Example Company security_advisory` in `/document/category` use the profile “CSAF Base”. This is important to prepare forward compatibility as later versions of CSAF might add new profiles. Therefore, the values which can be used for the profile “CSAF Base” might change.

## 4.2 Profile 2: Security incident response

This profile SHOULD be used to provide a response to a security breach or incident. This MAY also be used to convey information about an incident that is unrelated to the issuing party’s own products or infrastructure.

Example Company might use a CSAF document satisfying this profile to respond to a security incident at ACME Inc. and the implications on its own products and infrastructure.

A CSAF document SHALL fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile “Security incident response”:

- The following elements MUST exist and be valid:
  - all elements required by the profile “CSAF Base”.
  - `/document/notes` with at least one item which has a `category` of `description`, `details`, `general` or `summary` > Reasoning: Without at least one note item which contains information about response to the event referred to this doesn’t provide > any useful information.
  - `/document/references` with at least one item which has a `category` of `external` > The intended use for this field is to refer to one or more documents or websites which provides more details about the incident.
- The value of `/document/category` SHALL be `csaf_security_incident_response`.

## 4.3 Profile 3: Informational Advisory

This profile SHOULD be used to provide information which are **not related to a vulnerability** but e.g. a misconfiguration.

A CSAF document SHALL fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile “Informational Advisory”:

- The following elements MUST exist and be valid:
  - all elements required by the profile “CSAF Base”.
  - `/document/notes` with at least one item which has a `category` of `description`, `details`, `general` or `summary` > Reasoning: Without at least one note item which contains information about the “issue” which is the topic of the advisory it is useless.
  - `/document/references` with at least one item which has a `category` of `external` > The intended use for this field is to refer to one or more documents or websites which provide more details about > the issue or its remediation (if possible). > This could be a hardening guide, a manual, best practices or any other helpful information.
- The value of `/document/category` SHALL be `csaf_informational_advisory`.
- The element `/vulnerabilities` SHALL NOT exist. If there is any information that would reside in the element `/vulnerabilities` the CSAF document SHOULD use another profile, e.g. “Security Advisory”.

If the element `/product_tree` exists, a user MUST assume that all products mentioned are affected.



#### 4.4 Profile 4: Security Advisory

This profile SHOULD be used to provide information which is related to vulnerabilities and corresponding remediations.

A CSAF document SHALL fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile “Security Advisory”:

- The following elements MUST exist and be valid:
  - all elements required by the profile “CSAF Base”.
  - /product\_tree which lists all products referenced later on in the CSAF document regardless of their state.
  - /vulnerabilities which lists all vulnerabilities.
  - /vulnerabilities[]/notes > Provides details about the vulnerability.
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status > Lists each product’s status in regard to the vulnerability.
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_affected > Lists affected products in regard to the vulnerability.
  - For each product given in /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/fixed, the corresponding affected version SHALL be given. > Corresponding versions are usually in the same branches element.
- The value of /document/category SHALL be csaf\_security\_advisory.
- The following elements SHOULD exist:
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/fixed > Lists fixed products in regard to the vulnerability.
  - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations > Lists for each affected product in regard to the vulnerability appropriate remediations.

#### 4.5 Profile 5: VEX

This profile SHOULD be used to provide information of the “Vulnerability Exploitability eXchange”. The main purpose of the VEX format is to state that and why a certain product is, or is not, affected by a vulnerability. See [VEX] for details.

A CSAF document SHALL fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile “VEX”:

- The following elements MUST exist and be valid:
  - all elements required by the profile “CSAF Base”.
  - /product\_tree which lists all products referenced later on in the CSAF document regardless of their state.
  - /vulnerabilities which lists all vulnerabilities.
  - at least one of
    - \* /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/fixed
    - \* /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_affected
    - \* /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_not\_affected
    - \* /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/under\_investigation
  - at least one of
    - \* /vulnerabilities[]/cve
    - \* /vulnerabilities[]/ids
  - /vulnerabilities[]/notes > Provides details about the vulnerability.
- For each item in
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_not\_affected an impact statement SHALL exist as machine readable flag in /vulnerabilities[]/flags or as human readable justification in /vulnerabilities[]/threats. For the latter one, the category value for such a statement MUST be impact and the details field SHALL contain a description why the vulnerability cannot be exploited.

- `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected` additional product specific information SHALL be provided in `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations` as an action statement. Optional, additional information MAY also be provide through `/vulnerabilities[]/notes` and `/vulnerabilities[]/threats`. > The use of the categories `no_fix_planned` and `none_available` for an action statement is permitted. > Even though Product status lists Product IDs, Product Group IDs can be used in the `remediations` and `threats` object. > However, it MUST be ensured that for each Product ID the required information according to its product status as stated > in the two points above is available. This implies that all products with the status `known_not_affected` MUST have an > impact statement and all products with the status `known_affected` MUST have additional product specific information > regardless of whether that is referenced through the Product ID or a Product Group ID.
- The value of `/document/category` SHALL be `csaf_vex`.

#### 4.6 Profile 6: Deprecated Security Advisory

This profile MAY be used to provide information which is related to vulnerabilities and corresponding remediations, e.g. when converting CSAF documents from older CSAF versions or a human-readable format. It SHOULD NOT be used for newly created documents. The profile “Security Advisory” from section [sec]{profiles-profile-4-security-advisory} SHOULD be used instead.

The definition of the profile “Deprecated Security Advisory” in CSAF 2.1 matches the definition of profile “Security Advisory” in CSAF 2.0.

A CSAF document SHALL fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile “Deprecated Security Advisory”:

- The following elements MUST exist and be valid:
  - all elements required by the profile “CSAF Base”.
  - `/product_tree` which lists all products referenced later on in the CSAF document regardless of their state.
  - `/vulnerabilities` which lists all vulnerabilities.
  - `/vulnerabilities[]/notes` > Provides details about the vulnerability.
  - `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status` > Lists each product’s status in regard to the vulnerability.
- The value of `/document/category` SHALL be `csaf_deprecated_security_advisory`.

#### 4.7 Profile 7: Withdrawn

This profile MUST be used for any CSAF document that is withdrawn. It MUST NOT be used for any superseded document.

A CSAF document SHALL fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile “Withdrawn”:

- The following elements MUST exist and be valid:
  - all elements required by the profile “CSAF Base”.
  - `/document[]/notes` with exactly one item using the `category description` describing the original content and the reasons for the withdrawal > Other items, such as a legal disclaimer, may exist alongside the required one.  
The title MUST be Reasoning for Withdrawal for English or an unspecified document language. For any other language, it SHOULD be the language specific translation of that term.
  - `/document/tracking/revision_history` with at least 2 entries. Any previous items MUST NOT be removed. > A CSAF document cannot be withdrawn during the initial release to its specified target group. > In such case, the CSAF document should not be released at all. > If it was shared previously in draft status, then the `/document/tracking/status` is kept in draft.
- The value of `/document/category` SHALL be `csaf_withdrawn`.
- The elements `/product_tree` and `/vulnerabilities` SHALL NOT exist.

The CSAF document MAY link to additional information through `/document/references`.

#### 4.8 Profile 8: Superseded

This profile MUST be used for any CSAF document that is superseded. It MUST NOT be used for any withdrawn document.

A CSAF document SHALL fulfill the following requirements to satisfy the profile “Superseded”:

- The following elements MUST exist and be valid:
  - all elements required by the profile “CSAF Base”.
  - `/document[]/notes` with exactly one item using the `category description` > Other items, such as a legal disclaimer, may exist alongside the required one.  
The title MUST be Reasoning for Supersession for English or an unspecified document language. For any other language, it SHOULD be the language specific translation of that term.
  - `/document/tracking/revision_history` with at least 2 entries. Any previous items MUST NOT be removed. > A CSAF document cannot be superseded during the initial release to its specified target group. > In such case, the CSAF document should not be released at all. > If it was shared previously in draft status, then the `/document/tracking/status` is kept in draft.
  - `/document/references` containing at least one item with `category external` The summary MUST start with Superseding Document for English or an unspecified document language. For any other language, it SHOULD be the language specific translation of that term.
- The value of `/document/category` SHALL be `csaf_superseded`.
- The elements `/product_tree` and `/vulnerabilities` SHALL NOT exist.

## 5 Additional Conventions

This section provides additional rules for handling CSAF documents.

### 5.1 Filename

The following rules **MUST** be applied to determine the filename for the CSAF document:

1. The value `/document/tracking/id` is converted into lower case.
2. Any character sequence which is not part of one of the following groups **MUST** be replaced by a single underscore (`_`):
  - Lower case ASCII letters (0x61 - 0x7A)
  - digits (0x30 - 0x39)
  - special characters: `+` (0x2B), `-` (0x2D) > The regex `[^+\-a-z0-9]+` can be used to find a character sequence which has to be replaced by an underscore. > However, it **SHALL NOT** be applied before completing the first step. > > Even though the underscore `_` (0x5F) is a valid character in the filename it is replaced to avoid situations > where the conversion rule might lead to multiple consecutive underscores. > As a result, a `/document/tracking/id` with the value `2022_#01-A` is converted into `2022_01-a` instead of `2022__01-a`.
3. The file extension `.json` **MUST** be appended.

*Examples 1:*

```
cisco-sa-20190513-secureboot.json
example_company_-_2019-yh3234.json
rhba-2019_0024.json
```

It is currently considered best practice to indicate that a CSAF document is invalid by inserting `_invalid` into the filename in front of the file extension.

*Examples 2:*

```
cisco-sa-20190513-secureboot_invalid.json
example_company_-_2019-yh3234_invalid.json
rhba-2019_0024_invalid.json
```

### 5.2 Separation in Data Stream

If multiple CSAF documents are transported via a data stream in a sequence without requests inbetween, they **MUST** be separated by the Record Separator in accordance with [RFC7464].

### 5.3 Sorting

The keys within a CSAF document **SHOULD** be sorted alphabetically.

## 5.4 Usage of Markdown

The use of GitHub-flavoured Markdown is permitted in the following fields:

```
/document/acknowledgments[]/summary
/document/distribution/text
/document/notes[]/text
/document/publisher/issuing_authority
/document/references[]/summary
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/summary
/product_tree/product_groups[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/text
/vulnerabilities[]/references[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/details
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/entitlements[]
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/restart_required/details
/vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/details
```

Other fields MUST NOT contain Markdown.

## 5.5 Branch recursion

The `/product_tree` uses a nested structure for branches. Along a single path to a leaf, the recursion of branches is limited to 30 repetitions. Therefore, the longest path to a leaf is:

```
/product_tree/branches[]/branches[]/branches[]/branches[]/branches[]/branches[]/branches[]
```

## 5.6 Hardware and Software within the Product Tree

If a product consists of hardware and software, the hardware part MUST be presented as one product in the product tree and the software part as another one. To form the overall product, both parts MUST be combined through a relationship.

*Examples 1:*

```
"product_tree": {
  "branches": [
    {
      "branches": [
        {
          "branches": [
            {
              "category": "product_version",
              "name": "1.0",
              "product": {
                "name": "Example Company Controller A 1.0",
                "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070601",
                "product_identification_helper": {
                  "serial_numbers": [
                    "143-D-354"
                  ]
                }
              }
            }
          ]
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    }
  }
},
"category": "product_name",
"name": "Controller A"
},
{
  "branches": [
    {
      "category": "product_version",
      "name": "4.1",
      "product": {
        "name": "Example Company Controller A Firmware 4.1",
        "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070602",
        "product_identification_helper": {
          "hashes": [
            {
              "file_hashes": [
                {
                  "algorithm": "sha256",
                  "value": "3fb9d502d096b1dfbcdfe60eed80ddecd98c8771bf21a82bb"
                }
              ],
              "filename": "a_4-1.bin"
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "category": "product_version",
      "name": "4.2",
      "product": {
        "name": "Example Company Controller A Firmware 4.2",
        "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070603",
        "product_identification_helper": {
          "hashes": [
            {
              "file_hashes": [
                {
                  "algorithm": "sha256",
                  "value": "0a853ce2337f0608489ac596a308dc5b7b19d35a52b10bf31"
                }
              ],
              "filename": "a_4-2.bin"
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  ]
},
"category": "product_name",

```

```

        "name": "Controller A Firmware"
      }
    ],
    "category": "vendor",
    "name": "Example Company"
  }
],
"relationships": [
  {
    "category": "installed_on",
    "full_product_name": {
      "name": "Example Company Controller A Firmware 4.1 installed on Example Compa
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070604"
    },
    "product_reference": "CSAFPID-908070602",
    "relates_to_product_reference": "CSAFPID-908070601"
  },
  {
    "category": "installed_on",
    "full_product_name": {
      "name": "Example Company Controller A Firmware 4.2 installed on Example Compa
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070605"
    },
    "product_reference": "CSAFPID-908070603",
    "relates_to_product_reference": "CSAFPID-908070601"
  }
]
}

```

This requirement is important to allow for correct matching. The serial number 143-D-354 identifies the Example Company Controller A 1.0 which is in this example the hardware in its version 1.0. The hash 3fb9d502d096b1dfbcdfe60eed80ddecd98c8771bf21a82bbe1752735c4dc9e2 identifies the software in the version 4.1; the hash 0a853ce2337f0608489ac596a308dc5b7b19d35a52b10bf31261586ac368b identifies the software in the version 4.2. The relationships combine the software and hardware part and form new products. These are used e.g. to assign the product status in the vulnerability section.

A matching tool searches in a first step for the product identification helper, e.g. the serial number in an asset database to identify the asset that has this specific hardware and matches the software separately in a second step.

Representing the software version as a child element under elements representing hardware unsettles the consumer whether the version applies to the software or hardware. Also, this would violate the rule regarding the full identification of a product by the `product_identification_helper` from section 3.1.3.3.

Based on the CVE statistics up to and including the year 2024, in the majority of cases the vulnerabilities reside in software or are remediated via software. Having multiple products with the same `product_identification_helper` in different `product_status` for the same vulnerability would make it undecidable for machines what the `product_status` actually is.

## 6 Tests

The first three subsections list a number of tests which all will have a short description and an excerpt of an example which fails the test. The forth subsection groups tests into preset.

### 6.1 Mandatory Tests

Mandatory tests **MUST NOT** fail at a valid CSAF document. A program **MUST** handle a test failure as an error.

#### 6.1.1 Missing Definition of Product ID

For each element of type `/$defs/product_id_t` which is not inside a Full Product Name (type: `full_product_name_t`) and therefore reference an element within the `product_tree` it **MUST** be tested that the Full Product Name element with the matching `product_id` exists. The same applies for all items of elements of type `/$defs/products_t`.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/document/notes[]/product_ids[]
/product_tree/product_groups[]/product_ids[]
/product_tree/relationships[]/product_reference
/product_tree/relationships[]/relates_to_product_reference
/vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/product_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/flags[]/product_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/products[]
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/product_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_fixed[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/fixed[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_not_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/last_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/recommended[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/under_investigation[]
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/product_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/product_ids[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "product_groups": [
    {
      "group_id": "CSAFGID-1020300",
      "product_ids": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080701"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

Neither CSAFPID-9080700 nor CSAFPID-9080701 were defined in the `product_tree`.



### 6.1.2 Multiple Definition of Product ID

For each Product ID (type `/ $defs/product_id_t`) in Full Product Name elements (type: `/ $defs/full_product_name_t`) it MUST be tested that the `product_id` was not already defined within the same document.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])* /product/product_id
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_id
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_id
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product B"
    }
  ]
}
```

CSAFPID-9080700 was defined twice.

### 6.1.3 Circular Definition of Product ID

For each new defined Product ID (type `/ $defs/product_id_t`) in items of relationships (`/product_tree/relationships`) it MUST be tested that the `product_id` does not end up in a circle.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_id
```

As this can be quite complex a program for large CSAF documents, a program could check first whether a Product ID defined in a relationship item is used as `product_reference` or `relates_to_product_reference`. Only for those which fulfill this condition it is necessary to run the full check following the references.

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ],
  "relationships": [
```

```

{
  "category": "installed_on",
  "full_product_name": {
    "name": "Product B",
    "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080701"
  },
  "product_reference": "CSAFPID-9080700",
  "relates_to_product_reference": "CSAFPID-9080701"
}
]
}

```

CSAFPID-9080701 refers to itself - this is a circular definition.

#### 6.1.4 Missing Definition of Product Group ID

For each element of type /\$defs/product\_group\_id\_t which is not inside a Product Group (/product\_tree/product and therefore reference an element within the product\_tree it MUST be tested that the Product Group element with the matching group\_id exists. The same applies for all items of elements of type /\$defs/product\_groups\_t.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```

/document/notes[]/group_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/flags[]/group_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/group_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/group_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/group_ids[]
/vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/group_ids[]

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "threats": [
      {
        "category": "exploit_status",
        "details": "Reliable exploits integrated in Metasploit.",
        "group_ids": [
          "CSAFGID-1020301"
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]
}

```

CSAFGID-1020301 was not defined in the Product Tree.

### 6.1.5 Multiple Definition of Product Group ID

For each Product Group ID (type /\$defs/product\_group\_id\_t) Product Group elements (/product\_tree/product\_groups[]) it MUST be tested that the group\_id was not already defined within the same document.

The relevant path for this test is:

/product\_tree/product\_groups[]/group\_id

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080701",
      "name": "Product B"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080702",
      "name": "Product C"
    }
  ],
  "product_groups": [
    {
      "group_id": "CSAFGID-1020300",
      "product_ids": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080701"
      ]
    },
    {
      "group_id": "CSAFGID-1020300",
      "product_ids": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080702"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

CSAFGID-1020300 was defined twice.

### 6.1.6 Contradicting Product Status

For each item in `/vulnerabilities` it MUST be tested that the same Product ID is not member of contradicting product status groups. The sets formed by the contradicting groups within one vulnerability item MUST be pairwise disjoint.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "product_status": {
      "known_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700"
      ],
      "known_not_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700"
      ]
    }
  }
]
```

CSAFPID-9080700 is a member of the two contradicting groups “Affected” and “Not affected”.

### 6.1.7 Multiple Scores with same Version per Product

For each item in `/vulnerabilities` it MUST be tested that the same Product ID is not member of more than one CVSS-Vectors with the same version and same source.

Different source might assign different scores for the same product.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "cvss_v3": {
            "version": "3.1",
            "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:N/AC:L/PR:N/UI:N/S:C/C:H/I:H/A:H",
            "baseScore": 10,
            "baseSeverity": "CRITICAL"
          }
        }
      },
      {
        "content": {
          "cvss_v3": {
            "version": "3.1",
            "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:L/AC:L/PR:H/UI:R/S:U/C:H/I:H/A:H",
            "baseScore": 6.5,
            "baseSeverity": "MEDIUM"
          }
        }
      }
    ],
    "products": [
      "CSAFPID-9080700"
    ]
  },
  {
    "content": {
      "cvss_v3": {
        "version": "3.1",
        "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:L/AC:L/PR:H/UI:R/S:U/C:H/I:H/A:H",
        "baseScore": 6.5,
        "baseSeverity": "MEDIUM"
      }
    },
    "products": [
      "CSAFPID-9080700"
    ]
  }
]
}
]

```

Two CVSS v3.1 scores are given for CSAFPID-9080700 by the document author.

### 6.1.8 Invalid CVSS

It MUST be tested that the given CVSS object is valid according to the referenced schema.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```

/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v2
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"cvss_v3": {
  "version": "3.1",

```

```

"vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:L/AC:L/PR:H/UI:R/S:U/C:H/I:H/A:H",
"baseScore": 6.5
}

```

The required element `baseSeverity` is missing.

A tool MAY add one or more of the missing properties `version`, `baseScore` and `baseSeverity` based on the values given in `vectorString` as quick fix.

### 6.1.9 Invalid CVSS computation

It MUST be tested that the given CVSS object has the values computed correctly according to the definition.

The `vectorString` SHOULD take precedence.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```

/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v2/baseScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v2/temporalScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v2/environmentalScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/baseScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/baseSeverity
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/temporalScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/temporalSeverity
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/environmentalScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/environmentalSeverity
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4/baseScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4/baseSeverity
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4/threatScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4/threatSeverity
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4/environmentalScore
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4/environmentalSeverity

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"cvss_v3": {
  "version": "3.1",
  "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:L/AC:L/PR:H/UI:R/S:U/C:H/I:H/A:H",
  "baseScore": 10.0,
  "baseSeverity": "LOW"
}

```

Neither `baseScore` nor `baseSeverity` has the correct value according to the specification.

A tool MAY set the correct values as computed according to the specification as quick fix.

### 6.1.10 Inconsistent CVSS

It MUST be tested that the given CVSS properties do not contradict the CVSS vector.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v2
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v4
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"cvss_v3": {
  "version": "3.1",
  "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:N/AC:L/PR:N/UI:N/S:U/C:H/I:H/A:H",
  "baseScore": 9.8,
  "baseSeverity": "CRITICAL",
  "attackVector": "LOCAL",
  "attackComplexity": "LOW",
  "privilegesRequired": "NONE",
  "userInteraction": "NONE",
  "scope": "CHANGED",
  "confidentialityImpact": "HIGH",
  "integrityImpact": "HIGH",
  "availabilityImpact": "LOW"
}
```

The values in CVSS vector differs from values of the properties `attackVector`, `scope` and `availabilityImpact`.

A tool MAY overwrite contradicting values according to the `vectorString` as quick fix.

### 6.1.11 CWE

For each CWE it MUST be tested that the given CWE exists and is valid in the `version` provided. Any `id` that refers to a CWE Category or View MUST fail the test.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cwes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"cwes": [
  {
    "id": "CWE-79",
    "name": "Improper Input Validation",
    "version": "4.13"
  }
]
```

The CWE-79 exists. However, its name in version 4.13 is Improper Neutralization of Input During Web Page Generation ('Cross-site Scripting').

### 6.1.12 Language

For each element of type `/ $defs / lang_t` it MUST be tested that the language code is valid and exists.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/document/lang
/document/source_lang
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"lang": "EZ"
```

EZ is not a valid language. It is the subtag for the region “Eurozone”.

For any deprecated subtag, a tool MAY replace it with its preferred value as a quick fix.

### 6.1.13 PURL

It MUST be tested that all given purls are valid.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[] (/branches[])* /product/product_identification_helper/purls[]
/product_tree/full_product_names[] /product_identification_helper/purls[]
/product_tree/relationships[] /full_product_name/product_identification_helper/purls[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "name": "Product A",
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "product_identification_helper": {
        "purls": [
          "pkg:maven/@1.3.4"
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

Any valid purl has a name component.



### 6.1.14 Sorted Revision History

It MUST be tested that the value of `number` of items of the revision history are sorted ascending when the items are sorted ascending by `date` and as a second level criteria `number`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"revision_history": [
  {
    "date": "2024-01-22T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "2",
    "summary": "Second version."
  },
  {
    "date": "2024-01-23T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "1",
    "summary": "Initial version."
  }
]
```

The first item has a higher version number than the second.

### 6.1.15 Translator

It MUST be tested that `/document/source_lang` is present and set if the value `translator` is used for `/document/publisher/category`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/source_lang
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "publisher": {
    "category": "translator",
    "name": "CSAF TC Translator",
    "namespace": "https://csaf.io/translator"
  },
  "title": "Mandatory test: Translator (failing example 1)",
  // ...
}
```

The required element `source_lang` is missing.

### 6.1.16 Latest Document Version

It MUST be tested that document version has the same value as the `number` in the last item of the revision history when it is sorted ascending by `date` and as a second level criteria `number`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account. Build metadata is ignored in the comparison. Any pre-release part is also ignored if the document status is `draft`.

The relevant path for this test is:

`/document/tracking/version`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "revision_history": [
    {
      "date": "2024-01-21T09:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "1",
      "summary": "Initial version."
    },
    {
      "date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "2",
      "summary": "Second version."
    }
  ],
  // ...
  "version": "1"
}
```

The value of `number` of the last item after sorting is 2. However, the document version is 1.

### 6.1.17 Document Status Draft

It MUST be tested that document status is `draft` if the document version is `0` or `0.y.z` or contains the pre-release part.

The relevant path for this test is:

`/document/tracking/status`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "status": "final",
  "version": "0.9.5"
}
```

The `/document/tracking/version` is `0.9.5` but the document status is `final`.

### 6.1.18 Released Revision History

It MUST be tested that no item of the revision history has a number of 0 or 0.y.z when the document status is `final` or `interim`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/number
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "revision_history": [
    {
      "date": "2023-09-17T10:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "0",
      "summary": "First draft"
    },
    {
      "date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "1",
      "summary": "Initial version."
    }
  ],
  "status": "final",
  "version": "1"
}
```

The document status is `final` but the revision history includes an item which has 0 as value for number.

### 6.1.19 Revision History Entries for Pre-release Versions

It MUST be tested that no item of the revision history has a number which includes pre-release information.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/number
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"revision_history": [
  {
    "date": "2023-08-22T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "1.0.0-rc",
    "summary": "Release Candidate for initial version."
  },
  {
    "date": "2023-08-23T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "1.0.0",
    "summary": "Initial version."
  }
]
```

The revision history contains an item which has a number that indicates that this is pre-release.

### 6.1.20 Non-draft Document Version

It **MUST** be tested that document version does not contain a pre-release part if the document status is `final` or `interim`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/version
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "status": "interim",
  "version": "1.0.0-alpha"
}
```

The document status is `interim` but the document version contains the pre-release part `-alpha`.

### 6.1.21 Missing Item in Revision History

It **MUST** be tested that items of the revision history do not omit a version number when the items are sorted ascending by `date`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting **MUST** take timezones into account. In the case of semantic versioning, this applies only to the Major version. It **MUST** also be tested that the first item in such a sorted list has either the version number 0 or 1 in the case of integer versioning or a Major version of 0 or 1 in the case of semantic versioning.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"revision_history": [
  {
    "date": "2023-08-22T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "1",
    "summary": "Initial version."
  },
  {
    "date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "3",
    "summary": "Some other changes."
  }
]
```

The item for version 2 is missing.

### 6.1.22 Multiple Definition in Revision History

It MUST be tested that items of the revision history do not contain the same version number.

The relevant path for this test is:

`/document/tracking/revision_history`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"revision_history": [  
  {  
    "date": "2024-01-20T10:00:00.000Z",  
    "number": "1",  
    "summary": "Initial version."  
  },  
  {  
    "date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",  
    "number": "1",  
    "summary": "Some other changes."  
  }  
]
```

The revision history contains two items with the version number 1.

### 6.1.23 Multiple Use of Same CVE

It MUST be tested that a CVE is not used in multiple vulnerability items.

The relevant path for this test is:

`/vulnerabilities[]/cve`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [  
  {  
    "cve": "CVE-2017-0145"  
  },  
  {  
    "cve": "CVE-2017-0145"  
  }  
]
```

The vulnerabilities array contains two items with the same CVE identifier CVE-2017-0145.

### 6.1.24 Multiple Definition in Involvements

It MUST be tested that items of the list of involvements do not contain the same party regardless of its status more than once at any date.

The relevant path for this test is:

`/vulnerabilities[]/involvements`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "involvements": [
      {
        "date": "2023-08-23T10:00:00.000Z",
        "party": "vendor",
        "status": "completed"
      },
      {
        "date": "2023-08-23T10:00:00.000Z",
        "party": "vendor",
        "status": "in_progress",
        "summary": "The vendor has released a mitigation and is working to fully reso"
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The list of involvements contains two items with the same tuple party and date.

### 6.1.25 Multiple Use of Same Hash Algorithm

It MUST be tested that the same hash algorithm is not used multiple times in one item of hashes.

The relevant paths for this test are:

`/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/hashes[]`  
`/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_identification_helper/hashes[]/file_hashes`  
`/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_identification_helper/hashes[]`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "name": "Product A",
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "product_identification_helper": {
        "hashes": [
          {
            "file_hashes": [
```

```

    {
      "algorithm": "sha256",
      "value": "026a37919b182ef7c63791e82c9645e2f897a3f0b73c7a6028c7feb62e"
    },
    {
      "algorithm": "sha256",
      "value": "0a853ce2337f0608489ac596a308dc5b7b19d35a52b10bf31261586ac36"
    }
  ],
  "filename": "product_a.so"
}
]
}
]
}

```

The hash algorithm sha256 is used two times in one item of hashes.

#### 6.1.26 Prohibited Document Category Name

It MUST be tested that the document category is not equal to the (case insensitive) name (without the prefix `csaf_`) or value of any other profile than “CSAF Base”. Any occurrences of dash, whitespace, and underscore characters are removed from the values on both sides before the match. Also the value MUST NOT start with the reserved prefix `csaf_` except if the value is `csaf_base`.

This test does only apply for CSAF documents with the profile “CSAF Base”. Therefore, it MUST be skipped if the document category matches one of the values defined for the profile other than “CSAF Base”.

For CSAF 2.1, the test must be skipped for the following values in `/document/category`:

```

csaf_base
csaf_security_incident_response
csaf_informational_advisory
csaf_security_advisory
csaf_vex
csaf_deprecated_security_advisory
csaf_withdrawn
csaf_superseded

```

This is the only mandatory test related to the profile “CSAF Base” as the required fields SHALL be checked by validating the JSON schema.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/category
```

*Examples 1 (for currently prohibited values):*

```

Csaf_a
Informational Advisory
security-incident-response
Security      Advisory

```

```

veX
V_eX
Deprecated Security Advisory
withdrawn
Superseded

```

*Example 2 (which fails the test):*

```
"category": "Security_Incident_Response"
```

The value `Security_Incident_Response` is the name of a profile where the space was replaced with underscores.

### 6.1.27 Profile Tests

This subsection structures the mandatory tests for the profiles. Not all tests apply for all profiles. Tests SHOULD be skipped if the document category does not match the one given in the test. Each of the following tests SHOULD be treated as they were listed similar to the other tests.

An application MAY group these tests by profiles when providing the additional function to only run one or more selected tests. This results in one virtual test per profile.

#### 6.1.27.1 Document Notes

It MUST be tested that at least one item in `/document/notes` exists which has a category of `description`, `details`, `general` or `summary`.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```

csaf_informational_advisory
csaf_security_incident_response

```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/notes
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"notes": [
  {
    "category": "legal_disclaimer",
    "text": "The CSAF document is provided to You \"AS IS\" and \"AS AVAILABLE\" and
    "title": "Terms of Use"
  }
]

```

The document notes do not contain an item which has a category of `description`, `details`, `general` or `summary`.



### 6.1.27.2 Document References

It MUST be tested that at least one item in `/document/references` exists that has links to an external source.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```
csaf_informational_advisory
csaf_security_incident_response
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/references
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"references": [
  {
    "category": "self",
    "summary": "The canonical URL.",
    "url": "https://example.com/security/data/csaf/2024/oasis_csaf_tc-csaf_2_1-2024-6-1-27-02-01.json"
  }
]
```

The document references do not contain any item which has the category external.

### 6.1.27.3 Vulnerabilities

It MUST be tested that the element `/vulnerabilities` does not exist.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```
csaf_informational_advisory
csaf_withdrawn
csaf_superseded
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "title": "A vulnerability item that SHALL NOT exist"
  }
]
```

The element `/vulnerabilities` exists.

A tool MAY change the `/document/category` to `csaf_base` as a quick fix.

#### 6.1.27.4 Product Tree

It MUST be tested that the element `/product_tree` exists.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```
csaf_security_advisory
csaf_vex
csaf_deprecated_security_advisory
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/product_tree
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
{
  "document": {
    // ...
  },
  "vulnerabilities": [
    // ...
  ]
}
```

The element `/product_tree` does not exist.

#### 6.1.27.5 Vulnerability Notes

For each item in `/vulnerabilities` it MUST be tested that the element `notes` exists.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```
csaf_security_advisory
csaf_vex
csaf_deprecated_security_advisory
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/notes
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "product_status": {
      "known_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700"
      ]
    },
    "title": "A vulnerability item without a note"
  }
]
```

The vulnerability item has no notes element.

#### 6.1.27.6 Product Status

For each item in /vulnerabilities it MUST be tested that the element product\_status exists.

The relevant values for /document/category are:

```
csaf_security_advisory
csaf_deprecated_security_advisory
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "title": "A vulnerability item without a product status"
  }
]
```

The vulnerability item has no product\_status element.

#### 6.1.27.7 VEX Product Status

For each item in /vulnerabilities it MUST be tested that at least one of the elements fixed, known\_affected, known\_not\_affected, or under\_investigation is present in product\_status.

The relevant value for /document/category is:

```
csaf_vex
```

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/fixed
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_not_affected
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/under_investigation
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_status": {
  "first_fixed": [
    // ...
  ],
  "recommended": [
    // ...
  ]
}
```

None of the elements `fixed`, `known_affected`, `known_not_affected`, or `under_investigation` is present in `product_status`.

#### 6.1.27.8 Vulnerability ID

For each item in `/vulnerabilities` it MUST be tested that at least one of the elements `cve` or `ids` is present.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

`csaf_vex`

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cve
/vulnerabilities[]/ids
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "title": "A vulnerability item without a CVE or ID"
  }
]
```

None of the elements `cve` or `ids` is present.

#### 6.1.27.9 Impact Statement

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_not_affected` it MUST be tested that a corresponding impact statement exist in `/vulnerabilities[]/flags` or `/vulnerabilities[]/threats`. For the latter one, the `category` value for such a statement MUST be `impact`.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

`csaf_vex`

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/flags
/vulnerabilities[]/threats
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080701",
      "name": "Product B"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080702",
      "name": "Product C"
    }
  ],
  "product_groups": [
    {
      "group_id": "CSAFGID-0001",
      "product_ids": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080701"
      ]
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    // ...
    "product_status": {
      "known_not_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080701",
        "CSAFPID-9080702"
      ]
    },
    "threats": [
      {
        "category": "impact",
        "details": "The vulnerable code is not present in these products.",
        "group_ids": [
          "CSAFGID-0001"
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

There is no impact statement for CSAFPID-9080702.

Note: The impact statement for CSAFPID-9080700 and CSAFPID-9080701 is given through CSAFGID-0001.

### 6.1.27.10 Action Statement

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected` it MUST be tested that a corresponding action statement exist in `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations`.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

```
csaf_vex
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080701",
      "name": "Product B"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080702",
      "name": "Product C"
    }
  ],
  "product_groups": [
    {
      "group_id": "CSAFGID-0001",
      "product_ids": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080701"
      ],
      "summary": "EOL products"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    // ...
    "product_status": {
      "known_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080701",
        "CSAFPID-9080702"
      ]
    },
    "remediations": [
```

```

    {
      "category": "no_fix_planned",
      "details": "These products are end-of-life. Therefore, no fix will be provided",
      "group_ids": [
        "CSAFGID-0001"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
]

```

There is no action statement for CSAFPID-9080702.

Note: The action statement for CSAFPID-9080700 and CSAFPID-9080701 is given through CSAFGID-0001.

#### 6.1.27.11 Vulnerabilities

It MUST be tested that the element `/vulnerabilities` exists.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```

csaf_security_advisory
csaf_vex
csaf_deprecated_security_advisory

```

The relevant path for this test is:

```

/vulnerabilities

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

{
  "document": {
    // ...
  },
  "product_tree": [
    // ...
  ]
}

```

The element `/vulnerabilities` does not exist.

#### 6.1.27.12 Affected Products

For each item in `/vulnerabilities` it MUST be tested that the element `product_status/known_affected` exists.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

```

csaf_security_advisory

```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_status": {
  "under_investigation": [
    "CSAFPID-9080700"
  ]
}
```

The product status does not contain the known\_affected element.

### 6.1.27.13 Corresponding Affected Products

For each product listed in the product status group fixed in any vulnerability, it MUST be tested that a corresponding version of the product is listed as affected in the same vulnerability.

For a relationship installed\_with the product without any relationship is a corresponding product.

The relevant value for /document/category is:

```
csaf_security_advisory
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
{
  // ...
  "product_tree": {
    "branches": [
      {
        "branches": [
          {
            "branches": [
              {
                "category": "product_version",
                "name": "4.2",
                "product": {
                  "name": "Example Company Product A 4.2",
                  "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700"
                }
              }
            ],
            "category": "product_name",
            "name": "Product A"
          }
        ],
        "category": "vendor",
```



```

        "name": "Example Company"
      }
    ],
    },
    "vulnerabilities": [
      {
        // ...
        "product_status": {
          "fixed": [
            "CSAFPID-9080700"
          ]
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}

```

The vulnerability just contains the fixed product but does not list corresponding affected products.

#### 6.1.27.14 Document Notes

It MUST be tested that at least one item in `/document/notes` exists which has a `category` of description.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```

csaf_withdrawn
csaf_superseded

```

The relevant path for this test is:

```

/document/notes

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"notes": [
  {
    "category": "legal_disclaimer",
    "text": "The CSAF document is provided to You \"AS IS\" and \"AS AVAILABLE\" and",
    "title": "Terms of Use"
  }
]

```

The document notes do not contain an item which has a `category` of description.

### 6.1.27.15 Product Tree

It MUST be tested that the element `/product_tree` does not exist.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```
csaf_withdrawn
csaf_superseded
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/product_tree
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": [
  // ...
]
```

The element `/product_tree` exists.

### 6.1.27.16 Revision History

It MUST be tested that the revision history contains at least two entries.

The relevant values for `/document/category` are:

```
csaf_withdrawn
csaf_superseded
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"revision_history": [
  {
    "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "1",
    "summary": "Initial version."
  }
],
```

The revision history contains only one entry.

### 6.1.27.17 Reasoning for Withdrawal

If the document language is English or unspecified, it MUST be tested that exactly one item in document notes exists that has the title Reasoning for Withdrawal. The category of this item MUST be description.

The relevant value for /document/category is:

csaf\_withdrawn

The relevant path for this test is:

/document/notes

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"notes": [  
  {  
    "category": "summary",  
    "text": "This CSAF document contained example data and was withdrawn to create te  
    "title": "Reasoning for Withdrawal"  
  }  
],
```

The note has the correct title. However, it uses the wrong category.

### 6.1.27.18 Reasoning for Supersession

If the document language is English or unspecified, it MUST be tested that exactly one item in document notes exists that has the title Reasoning for Supersession. The category of this item MUST be description.

The relevant value for /document/category is:

csaf\_superseded

The relevant path for this test is:

/document/notes

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"notes": [  
  {  
    "category": "details",  
    "text": "This CSAF document contained example data and was withdrawn to create te  
    "title": "Reasoning for Supersession"  
  }  
],
```

The note has the correct title. However, it uses the wrong category.

### 6.1.27.19 Reference to Superseding Document

If the document language is English or unspecified, it MUST be tested that at least one item in document references exists that has a summary starting with Superseding Document. The category of this item MUST be external.

The relevant value for /document/category is:

```
csaf_superseded
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/references
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"references": [
  {
    "category": "self",
    "summary": "Superseding Document",
    "url": "https://example.com/.well-known/csaf/clear/2024/esa-2024-1234.json"
  }
],
```

The reference summary starts correctly with the string “Superseding Document”. However, it uses the wrong category.

### 6.1.28 Translation

It MUST be tested that the given source language and document language are not the same.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/lang
/document/source_lang
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "lang": "en-US",
  // ...
  "source_lang": "en-US",
  // ...
}
```

The document language and the source language have the same value en-US.  
Note: A translation from en-US to en-GB would pass the test.

A tool MAY remove the source language as quick fix.

### 6.1.29 Remediation without Product Reference

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations` it MUST be tested that it includes at least one of the elements `group_ids` or `product_ids`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"remediations": [
  {
    "category": "no_fix_planned",
    "details": "These products are end-of-life. Therefore, no fix will be provided."
  }
]
```

The given remediation does not specify to which products it should be applied.

A tool MAY add all products of the affected group of this vulnerability to the remediation as quick fix.

### 6.1.30 Mixed Integer and Semantic Versioning

It MUST be tested that all elements of type `/$defs/version_t` follow either integer versioning or semantic versioning homogeneously within the same document.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/number
/document/tracking/version
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "revision_history": [
    {
      "date": "2024-01-21T09:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "1.0.0",
      "summary": "Initial version."
    },
    {
      "date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "2",
      "summary": "Second version."
    }
  ],
  // ...
  "version": "2"
}
```

The document started with semantic versioning (1.0.0) and switched to integer versioning (2).

A tool MAY assign all items their corresponding value according to integer versioning as a quick fix. In such case, the old number SHOULD be stored in `legacy_version`.

### 6.1.31 Version Range in Product Version

For each element of type `/defs/branches_t` with category of `product_version` it MUST be tested that the value of `name` does not contain a version range.

To implement this test it is deemed sufficient that, when converted to lower case, the value of `name` satisfies the two requirements below:

1. It does not contain any of the following operators:

```
<
<=
>
>=
```

2. If interpreted as a list of individual words separated by whitespace, the list does not contain any of the following keywords:

```
after
all
before
earlier
later
prior
versions
```

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])* /name
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"branches": [
  {
    "category": "product_version",
    "name": "prior to 4.2",
    // ...
  }
]
```

The version range `prior to 4.2` is given for the branch category `product_version`.

### 6.1.32 Flag without Product Reference

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]/flags` it MUST be tested that it includes at least one of the elements `group_ids` or `product_ids`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/flags[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"flags": [
  {
    "label": "component_not_present"
  }
]
```

The given flag does not specify to which products it should be applied.

### 6.1.3.3 Multiple Flags with VEX Justification Codes per Product

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]` it MUST be tested that a Product is not member of more than one Flag item with a VEX justification code (see section 3.2.4.7). This takes indirect relations through Product Groups into account.

Additional flags with a different purpose might be provided in later versions of CSAF. Through the explicit reference of VEX justification codes the test is specified to be forward-compatible.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/flags
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    },
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080701",
      "name": "Product B"
    }
  ],
  "product_groups": [
    {
      "group_id": "CSAFGID-0001",
      "product_ids": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700",
        "CSAFPID-9080701"
      ]
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    // ...
    "flags": [
```

```

{
  "label": "component_not_present",
  "group_ids": [
    "CSAFGID-0001"
  ]
},
{
  "label": "vulnerable_code_cannot_be_controlled_by_adversary",
  "product_ids": [
    "CSAFPID-9080700"
  ]
}
],
// ...
"product_status": {
  "known_not_affected": [
    "CSAFPID-9080700",
    "CSAFPID-9080701"
  ]
}
}
]

```

There are two flags given for CSAFPID-9080700 - one indirect through CSAFGID-0001 and one direct.

#### 6.1.34 Branches Recursion Depth

For each product defined under `/product_tree/branches[]` it MUST be tested that the complete JSON path does not contain more than 30 instances of branches.

The relevant path for this test is:

`/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"product_tree": {
  "branches": [
    {
      "branches": [
        {
          "branches": [
            {
              "branches": [
                {
                  "branches": [
                    {
                      "branches": [
                        {
                          "branches": [
                            {
                              "branches": [
                                {
                                  "branches": [
                                    {
                                      "branches": [
                                        {
                                          "branches": [
                                            {
                                              "branches": [
                                                {
                                                  "branches": [
                                                    {
                                                      "branches": [
                                                        {
                                                          "branches": [
                                                            {
                                                              "branches": [
                                                                {
                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                    {
                                                                      "branches": [
                                                                        {
                                                                          "branches": [
                                                                            {
                                                                              "branches": [
                                                                                {
                                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                                    {
                                                                                      "branches": [
                                                                                        {
                                                                                          "branches": [
                                                                                            {
                                                                                              "branches": [
                                                                                                {
                                                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                                                    {
                                                                                                      "branches": [
                                                                                                        {
                                                                                                          "branches": [
                                                                                                            {
                                                                                                              "branches": [
                                                                                                                {
                                                                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                                                                    {
                                                                                                                      "branches": [
                                                                                                                        {
                                                                                                                          "branches": [
                                                                                                                            {
                                                                                                                              "branches": [
                                                                                                                                {
                                                                                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                                                                                    {
                                                                                                                                      "branches": [
                                                                                                                                        {
                                                                                                                                          "branches": [
                                                                                                                                            {
                                                                                                                                            }
                                                                                                                                          }
                                                                                                                                      }
                                                                                                                                    }
                                                                                                                                  }
                                                                                                                                }
                                                                                                                              }
                                                                                                                            }
                                                                                                                          }
                                                                                                                        }
                                                                                                                      }
                                                                                                                    }
                                                                                                                  }
                                                                                                                }
                                                                                                              }
                                                                                                            }
                                                                                                          }
                                                                                                        }
                                                                                                      }
                                                                                                    }
                                                                                                  }
                                                                                                }
                                                                                              }
                                                                                            }
                                                                                          }
                                                                                        }
                                                                                      }
                                                                                    }
                                                                                  }
                                                                                }
                                                                              }
                                                                            }
                                                                          }
                                                                        }
                                                                      }
                                                                    }
                  ]
                }
              ]
            }
          ]
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}

```



```
{
  "branches": [
    {
      "branches": [
        {
          "branches": [
            {
              "branches": [
                {
                  "branches": [
                    {
                      "branches": [
                        {
                          "branches": [
                            {
                              "branches": [
                                {
                                  "branches": [
                                    {
                                      "branches": [
                                        {
                                          "branches": [
                                            {
                                              "branches": [
                                                {
                                                  "branches": [
                                                    {
                                                      "branches": [
                                                        {
                                                          "branches": [
                                                            {
                                                              "branches": [
                                                                {
                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                    {
                                                                      "branches": [
                                                                        {
                                                                          "branches": [
                                                                            {
                                                                              "branches": [
                                                                                {
                                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                                    {
                                                                                      "branches": [
                                                                                        {
                                                                                          "branches": [
                                                                                            {
                                                                                              "branches": [
                                                                                                {
                                                                                                  "branches": [
                                                                                                  }
                                                                                                }
                                                                                              }
                                                                                            }
                                                                                          }
                                                                                        }
                                                                                      }
                                                                                    }
                                                                                  }
                                                                                }
                                                                              }
                                                                            }
                                                                          }
                                                                        }
                                                                      }
                                                                    }
                                                                  }
                                                                }
                                                              }
                                                            }
                                                          }
                                                        }
                                                      }
                                                    }
                                                  }
                                                }
                                              }
                                            }
                                          }
                                        }
                                      }
                                    }
                                  }
                                }
                              }
                            }
                          }
                        }
                      }
                    }
                  }
                }
              }
            }
          }
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

9080700"

```

    ],
    "category": "name",
    }
],
"category": "name": "un

```

```

    }
    ],
    "category": "product_family",
    "name": "less"
  }
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "or"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "more"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "and"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "unnecessary"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "seem"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "which"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "product"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "hypothetical"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "this"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "for"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "structure"
}
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "nested"
}

```

```

        ],
        "category": "product_family",
        "name": "deeply"
      }
    ],
    "category": "product_family",
    "name": "a"
  }
],
"category": "product_family",
"name": "uses"
}
],
"category": "vendor",
"name": "Example Company"
}
]
}

```

The complete JSON path contains 31 times branches.

### 6.1.35 Contradicting Remediations

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations` it MUST be tested that a product is not member of contradicting remediation categories. This takes indirect relations through product groups into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"remediations": [
  {
    "category": "no_fix_planned",
    "details": "The product is end-of-life. Therefore, no fix will be provided.",
    "product_ids": [
      "CSAFPID-9080700"
    ]
  },
  {
    "category": "vendor_fix",
    "details": "Update to version >=14.3 to fix the vulnerability.",
    "product_ids": [
      "CSAFPID-9080700"
    ]
  }
]

```

The two remediations given for the product with product ID CSAFPID-9080700 contradict each other.

A tool MAY apply the conversion rules from the conformance target CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter if applicable or remove the product from the remediation with the lower priority. The priority MAY be defined as follows: vendor\_fix > mitigation > workaround > fix\_planned > no\_fix\_planned > optional\_patch > none\_available

### 6.1.36 Contradicting Product Status Remediation Combination

For each item in /vulnerabilities[]/remediations it MUST be tested that a product is not member of a contradicting product status group. This takes indirect relations through product groups into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_status": {
  "known_not_affected": [
    "CSAFPID-9080700"
  ]
},
"remediations": [
  {
    "category": "vendor_fix",
    "details": "Update to version >=14.3 to fix the vulnerability.",
    "product_ids": [
      "CSAFPID-9080700"
    ]
  }
]
```

For the product with product ID CSAFPID-908070 a vendor\_fix is given but the product was not affected at all.

### 6.1.37 Date and Time

For each item of type string and format date-time it MUST be tested that it conforms to the rules given in section sec.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/current_release_date
/document/tracking/generator/date
/document/tracking/initial_release_date
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/date
/vulnerabilities[]/disclosure_date
/vulnerabilities[]/discovery_date
/vulnerabilities[]/first_known_exploitation_dates[]/date
/vulnerabilities[]/first_known_exploitation_dates[]/exploitation_date
/vulnerabilities[]/flags[]/date
/vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/date
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/date
/vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"current_release_date": "2024-01-24 10:00:00.000Z",
```

The `current_release_date` uses a whitespace as separator instead the letter T.

### 6.1.38 Non-Public Sharing Group with Max UUID

It MUST be tested that a CSAF document using Max UUID as sharing group ID has the TLP label CLEAR.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/distribution/tlp/label
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"distribution": {
  "sharing_group": {
    "id": "ffffffff-ffff-ffff-ffff-fffffffffffffff",
    "name": "Public"
  },
  "tlp": {
    "label": "RED"
  }
},
```

The sharing group uses the Max UUID but the CSAF document is labeled as TLP:RED.

A tool MAY remove the property `sharing_group` as a quick fix.

### 6.1.39 Public Sharing Group with no Max UUID

It MUST be tested that a CSAF document with the TLP label CLEAR use the Max UUID as sharing group ID if any. The test SHALL pass if no sharing group is present or the Nil UUID is used and the document status is `draft`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/distribution/sharing_group/id
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"distribution": {
  "sharing_group": {
    "id": "5868d6be-b28a-404e-a245-0b5093b31b8b"
  },
  "tlp": {
    "label": "CLEAR"
  }
},
```

The sharing group is present for the TLP:CLEAR document but it differs from the Max UUID.

A tool MAY update the sharing group id as a quick fix.

#### 6.1.40 Invalid Sharing Group Name

It MUST be tested that the value of sharing group name does not equal the reserved values from section 3.2.2.5.1 if the precondition is not fulfilled.

The relevant path for this test is:

/document/distribution/sharing\_group/name

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"distribution": {
  "sharing_group": {
    "id": "5868d6be-b28a-404e-a245-0b5093b31b8b",
    "name": "Public"
  },
  // ...
},
```

The sharing group name is Public but it does not use the Max UUID.

A tool MAY update the sharing group name as a quick fix.

#### 6.1.41 Missing Sharing Group Name

It MUST be tested that the sharing group name exists and equals the predefined reserved value from section 3.2.2.5.1 if the precondition is fulfilled.

The relevant path for this test is:

/document/distribution/sharing\_group/name

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"distribution": {
  "sharing_group": {
    "id": "ffffffff-ffff-ffff-ffff-fffffffffffffff"
  },
  // ...
},
```

The Max UUID is used but the sharing group name does not exist.

A tool MAY add the corresponding sharing group name as a quick fix.

### 6.1.42 PURL Qualifiers

For each `product_identification_helper` object containing multiple purls it MUST be tested that the purls only differ in their qualifiers.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/purls[]
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_identification_helper/purls[]
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_identification_helper/purls[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "name": "Product A",
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "product_identification_helper": {
        "purls": [
          "pkg:maven/com.example/logging@1.3.4",
          "pkg:maven/com.example/audit@1.3.4"
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

The two purls differ in the name component.

### 6.1.43 Use of Multiple Stars in Model Number

For each model number it MUST be tested that the it does not contain multiple unescaped stars.

Multiple `*` that match zero or multiple characters within a model number introduce ambiguity and are therefore prohibited.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/model_number
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_id/product_identification_helper/model_number
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_id/product_identification_helper/model_number
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"model_numbers": [
  "P*A*"
]
```

The model number contains two unescaped stars.



#### 6.1.44 Use of Multiple Stars in Serial Number

For each serial number it MUST be tested that the it does not contain multiple unescaped stars.

Multiple `*` that match zero or multiple characters within a serial number introduce ambiguity and are therefore prohibited.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/serial_n
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_id/product_identification_helper/serial_nu
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_id/product_identification_hel
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"serial_numbers": [
  "P* A*"
]
```

The serial number contains two unescaped stars.

#### 6.1.45 Inconsistent Disclosure Date

For each vulnerability, it MUST be tested that the `disclosure_date` is earlier than or equal to the `date` of the newest item of the `revision_history` if the document is labeled `TLP: CLEAR` and the document status is `final` or `interim`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/disclosure_date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "distribution": {
    "tlp": {
      "label": "CLEAR"
    }
  },
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    // ...
    "revision_history": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
        "number": "1",
        "summary": "Initial version."
      }
    ],
    "status": "final",
    // ...
  }
```

```

    }
  },
  "vulnerabilities": [
    {
      "disclosure_date": "2024-02-24T10:00:00.000Z"
    }
  ]
}

```

The document is labeled TLP:CLEAR and in status final but the disclosure\_date is newer than the date of newest item in the revision\_history.

#### 6.1.46 Invalid Ssvc

It MUST be tested that the given Ssvc object is valid according to the referenced schema.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"ssvc_v1": {
  "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
  "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
  "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
}

```

The required element selections is missing.

A tool MAY add the missing property id based on the values given in cve respectively ids[]/text as quick fix.

#### 6.1.47 Inconsistent Ssvc ID

For each ssvc\_v1 object it MUST be tested that id is either the CVE of the vulnerability given in cve or the text of an item in the ids array. The test MUST fail, if the id equals the /document/tracking/id and the CSAF document contains more than one vulnerability.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/id
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "ssvc_v1": {

```

```

    "id": "CVE-1900-0002",
    "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
    "selections": [
      {
        "name": "Exploitation",
        "namespace": "ssvc",
        "values": [
          "None"
        ],
        "version": "1.1.0"
      }
    ],
    "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
  }
},
// ...
}
]
}
]

```

The Ssvc ID does not match the CVE ID.

#### 6.1.48 Ssvc Decision Points

For each Ssvc decision point given under `selections` with a registered namespace, it MUST be tested that given decision point exists, is valid and the items in `values` are ordered correctly. The test SHALL pass, if a non-registered namespace is used.

According to the Ssvc project, the following values are currently registered:

```

cvss
nciss
ssvc

```

A list of all valid decision points including their values is available at the [Ssvc repository](#). The items in `values` need to have the same order as in their definition.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/selections[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "ssvc_v1": {
            "id": "CVE-1900-0001",

```

```

    "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
    "selections": [
      {
        "name": "Mission Impact",
        "namespace": "ssvc",
        "values": [
          "None",
          "Degraded"
        ],
        "version": "1.0.0"
      }
    ],
    "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
  }
},
// ...
}
]
}
]

```

The Ssvc decision point `Mission Impact` doesn't have the value `Degraded` in version `1.0.0`.

If applicable, a tool MAY sort the items in `values` according to the order of their definition as a quick fix.

#### 6.1.49 Inconsistent Ssvc Timestamp

For each vulnerability, it MUST be tested that the each Ssvc timestamp is earlier than or equal to the date of the newest item of the `revision_history` if the document status is `final` or `interim`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/timestamp
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"document": {
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    // ...
    "revision_history": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
        "number": "1",
        "summary": "Initial version."
      }
    ],
    "status": "final",
    // ...
  }
},

```

```
// ...
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "ssvc_v1": {
            "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
            "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
            "selections": [
              {
                "name": "Exploitation",
                "namespace": "ssvc",
                "values": [
                  "Active"
                ],
                "version": "1.1.0"
              }
            ],
            "timestamp": "2024-07-13T10:00:00.000Z"
          }
        },
        // ...
      }
    ]
  }
]

```

The document is in status final but the Ssvc timestamp is newer than the date of newest item in the revision\_history.

### 6.1.50 Product Version Range Rules

For each element of type /\$defs/branches\_t with category of product\_version\_range, it MUST be tested that the value of name complies with the rules given in section 3.1.2.3.2.

The relevant path for this test is:

/product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\* /name

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
{
  "category": "product_version_range",
  "name": "all versions < 4.2.0",
  // ...
}
```

The version range given does not comply with the rules given in section 3.1.2.3.2.

### 6.1.51 Inconsistent EPSS Timestamp

For each vulnerability, it MUST be tested that the each EPSS timestamp is earlier than or equal to the date of the newest item of the `revision_history` if the document status is `final` or `interim`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/epss/timestamp
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "distribution": {
    "tlp": {
      "label": "CLEAR"
    }
  },
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    // ...
    "revision_history": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
        "number": "1",
        "summary": "Initial version."
      }
    ],
    "status": "final",
    // ...
  }
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "epss": {
            "percentile": "0.999990000",
            "probability": "0.975570000",
            "timestamp": "2024-07-13T10:00:00.000Z"
          }
        },
        "products": [
          "CSAFPID-9080700"
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The document is in status `final` but the EPSS timestamp is newer than the date of newest item in the `revision_history`.

### 6.1.52 Inconsistent First Known Exploitation Dates

For each First Known Exploitation Dates item, it MUST be tested that the values of its `date` and `exploitation_date` properties are both earlier than or equal to the date of the newest item of the `revision_history` if the document status is `final` or `interim`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/first_known_exploitation_dates[]/date
/vulnerabilities[]/first_known_exploitation_dates[]/exploitation_date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    // ...
    "revision_history": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
        "number": "1",
        "summary": "Initial version."
      }
    ],
    "status": "final",
    // ...
  }
},
// ...
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "first_known_exploitation_dates": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T13:00:00.000Z",
        "exploitation_date": "2024-01-24T12:34:56.789Z",
        // ...
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The document is in status `final` but the values of the properties `date` and `exploitation_date` of the First Known Exploitation Dates item are newer than the date of newest item in the `revision_history`.

### 6.1.53 Inconsistent Exploitation Date

For each First Known Exploitation Dates item, it MUST be tested that the value of `exploitation_date` is earlier than or equal to value of the sibling element `date`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/first_known_exploitation_dates[]/exploitation_date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    // ...
    "revision_history": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
        "number": "1",
        "summary": "Initial version."
      }
    ],
    "status": "final",
    // ...
  }
},
// ...
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "first_known_exploitation_dates": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T13:00:00.000Z",
        "exploitation_date": "2024-01-24T12:34:56.789Z",
        // ...
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The document is in status `final` but the value of `exploitation_date` is newer than the value of `date` in the same item.

### 6.1.54 License Expression

It MUST be tested that the license expression is valid.

To implement this test, it is deemed sufficient to check for the ABNF defined in annex B of [SPDX301] and the restriction on the `DocumentRef` part given in 3.2.2.7

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/license_expression
```



*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"license_expression": "This is a license text that should not be here.",
```

The license expression contains a license text instead of a SPDX license expression.

### 6.1.55 License Text

If the document language is English or unspecified, and the `license_expression` contains license identifiers or exceptions that are not listed in the SPDX license list or Aboutcode's "ScanCode LicenseDB", it **MUST** be tested that exactly one item in document notes exists that has the title `License`. The category of this item **MUST** be `legal_disclaimer`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/notes
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "license_expression": "LicenseRef-www.example.com-no-work-pd",
  "notes": [
    {
      "category": "other",
      "text": "This is not a work and therefore it can't be licensed. Use it as public",
      "title": "License"
    }
  ],
  // ...
}
```

The note has the correct title. However, it uses the wrong category.

## 6.2 Recommended Tests

Recommended tests **SHOULD NOT** fail at a valid CSAF document without a good reason. Failing such a test does not make the CSAF document invalid. These tests may include information about features which are still supported but expected to be deprecated in a future version of CSAF. A program **MUST** handle a test failure as a warning.

### 6.2.1 Unused Definition of Product ID

For each Product ID (type `/defs/product_id_t`) in Full Product Name elements (type: `/defs/full_product_name_t`) it **MUST** be tested that the `product_id` is referenced somewhere within the same document.

This test **SHALL** be skipped for CSAF documents conforming the profile "Informational Advisory".

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_id
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_id
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_id
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
}
```

CSAFPID-9080700 was defined but never used.

A tool MAY remove the unused definition as quick fix. However, such quick fix shall not be applied if the test was skipped.

### 6.2.2 Missing Remediation

For each Product ID (type /\$defs/product\_id\_t) in the Product Status groups Affected and Under investigation it MUST be tested that a remediation exists.

The remediation might be of the category none\_available or no\_fix\_planned.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/last_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/under_investigation[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "product_status": {
      "last_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700"
      ]
    }
  }
]
```

CSAFPID-9080700 has in Product Status `last_affected` but there is no remediation object for this Product ID.

### 6.2.3 Missing Metric

For each Product ID (type `/product_id_t`) in the Product Status groups Affected it MUST be tested that a metric object exists which covers this product.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/known_affected[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/last_affected[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "product_status": {
      "first_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700"
      ]
    }
  }
]
```

CSAFPID-9080700 has in Product Status `first_affected` but there is no metric object which covers this Product ID.

### 6.2.4 Build Metadata in Revision History

For each item in revision history it MUST be tested that number does not include build metadata.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/number
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"revision_history": [
  {
    "date": "2023-08-23T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "1.0.0+exp.sha.ac00785",
    "summary": "Initial version."
  }
]
```

The revision history contains an item which has a number that includes the build metadata `+exp.sha.ac00785`.

### 6.2.5 Older Initial Release Date than Revision History

It MUST be tested that the Initial Release Date is not older than the date of the oldest item in Revision History. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting and comparison MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/initial_release_date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "initial_release_date": "2023-08-22T10:00:00.000Z",
  "revision_history": [
    {
      "date": "2023-09-06T10:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "1",
      "summary": "Initial version."
    },
    {
      "date": "2024-01-21T11:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "2",
      "summary": "Second version."
    }
  ],
  // ...
}
```

The initial release date `2023-08-22T10:00:00.000Z` is older than `2023-09-06T10:00:00.000Z` which is the date of the oldest item in Revision History.

### 6.2.6 Older Current Release Date than Revision History

It MUST be tested that the Current Release Date is not older than the date of the newest item in Revision History. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting and comparison MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/current_release_date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"tracking": {
  "current_release_date": "2023-09-06T10:00:00.000Z",
  // ...
  "revision_history": [
    {
      "date": "2023-09-06T10:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "1",
      "summary": "Initial version."
    },
    {
      "date": "2024-01-21T11:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "2",
      "summary": "Second version."
    }
  ],
  // ...
}
```

The current release date 2023-09-06T10:00:00.000Z is older than 2023-09-23T1100:00.000Z which is the date of the newest item in Revision History.

### 6.2.7 Missing Date in Involvements

For each item in the list of involvements it MUST be tested that it includes the property date.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/involvements
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "involvements": [
      {
        "party": "vendor",
        "status": "in_progress"
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The list of involvements contains an item which does not contain the property date.

### 6.2.8 Use of MD5 as the only Hash Algorithm

It MUST be tested that the hash algorithm md5 is not the only one present.

Since collision attacks exist for MD5 such value should be accompanied by a second cryptographically stronger hash. This will allow users to double check the results.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[] (/branches[])* /product/product_identification_helper/ hashes[]
/product_tree/full_product_names[] /product_identification_helper/ hashes[] /file_hashes[]
/product_tree/relationships[] /full_product_name/product_identification_helper/ hashes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "name": "Product A",
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "product_identification_helper": {
        "hashes": [
          {
            "file_hashes": [
              {
                "algorithm": "md5",
                "value": "6ae24620ea9656230f49234efd078935"
              }
            ],
            "filename": "product_a.so"
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

The hash algorithm md5 is used in one item of hashes without being accompanied by a second hash algorithm.

### 6.2.9 Use of SHA-1 as the only Hash Algorithm

It MUST be tested that the hash algorithm sha1 is not the only one present.

Since collision attacks exist for SHA-1 such value should be accompanied by a second cryptographically stronger hash. This will allow users to double check the results.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[] (/branches[])* /product/product_identification_helper/ hashes[]
/product_tree/full_product_names[] /product_identification_helper/ hashes[] /file_hashes[]
/product_tree/relationships[] /full_product_name/product_identification_helper/ hashes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "name": "Product A",
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "product_identification_helper": {
        "hashes": [
          {
            "file_hashes": [
              {
                "algorithm": "sha1",
                "value": "e067035314dd8673fe1c9fc6b01414fe0950fdc4"
              }
            ],
            "filename": "product_a.so"
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

The hash algorithm `sha1` is used in one item of hashes without being accompanied by a second hash algorithm.

#### 6.2.10 Missing TLP label (obsolete)

The TLP label is now required by the schema. Therefore, the recommended test is obsolete. This section is kept to document that change and keep the numbering of the remaining sections stable. The test is excluded from any preset and requirement to be executed.

#### 6.2.11 Missing Canonical URL

It **MUST** be tested that the CSAF document has a canonical URL.

To implement this test it is deemed sufficient that one item in `/document/references` fulfills all of the following:

- It has the category `self`.
- The `url` starts with `https://`.
- The `url` ends with the valid filename for the CSAF document according to the rules in section 5.1.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/references
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"document": {
  // ...
  "references": [
    {
      "category": "self",

```

```

    "summary": "A non-canonical URL.",
    "url": "https://example.com/security/data/csaf/2024/oasis_csaf_tc-csaf_2.1-
2024-6-2-11-01_1.json"
  },
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    // ...
    "id": "OASIS-CSAF_TC-CSAF_2.1-2024-6-2-11-01",
    // ...
    "version": "1"
  },
  // ...
}

```

The only element where the `category` is `self` has a URL that does not fulfill the requirement of a valid filename for a CSAF document.

### 6.2.12 Missing Document Language

It MUST be tested that the document language is present and set.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/lang
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"document": {
  "category": "csaf_base",
  "csaf_version": "2.1",
  "distribution": {
    "tlp": {
      "label": "CLEAR"
    }
  },
  "publisher": {
    // ...
  },
  // ...
}

```

The document language is not defined.

### 6.2.13 Sorting

It MUST be tested that all keys in a CSAF document are sorted alphabetically.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/
```



*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  "csaf_version": "2.1",
  "category": "csaf_base",
  // ...
}
```

The key `csaf_version` is not at the right place.

A tool MAY sort the keys as a quick fix.

#### 6.2.14 Use of Private Language

For each element of type `/defs/lang_t` it MUST be tested that the language code does not contain subtags reserved for private use.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/document/lang
/document/source_lang
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"lang": "qtx"
```

The language code `qtx` is reserved for private use.

A tool MAY remove such subtag as a quick fix.

#### 6.2.15 Use of Default Language

For each element of type `/defs/lang_t` it MUST be tested that the language code is not `i-default`.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/document/lang
/document/source_lang
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"lang": "i-default"
```

The language code `i-default` is used.

A tool MAY remove such element as a quick fix.

### 6.2.16 Missing Product Identification Helper

For each element of type `/defs/full_product_name_t` it MUST be tested that it includes the property `product_identification_helper`.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[] (/branches[])* /product
/product_tree/full_product_names[]
/product_tree/relationships[] /full_product_name
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"full_product_names": [
  {
    "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
    "name": "Product A"
  }
]
```

The product CSAFPID-9080700 does not provide any Product Identification Helper at all.

### 6.2.17 CVE in field IDs

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]/ids` it MUST be tested that it is not a CVE ID.

It is sufficient to check, whether the property `text` matches the regex `^CVE-[0-9]{4}-[0-9]{4},}$`.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/ids[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"ids": [
  {
    "system_name": "CVE Project",
    "text": "CVE-2021-44228"
  }
]
```

The CVE-2021-44228 is listed in an item of the `ids` array instead under `cve`.

A tool MAY set such element as value for the `cve` property as a quick fix, if that didn't exist before. Alternatively, it MAY remove such element as a quick fix.

### 6.2.18 Product Version Range without vers

For each element of type `/defs/branches_t` with category of `product_version_range` it MUST be tested that the value of `name` conforms the `vers` specification.

To implement this test it is deemed sufficient that the value of `name` matches the following regex:

```
^vers:[a-z\\.\\-\\+][a-z0-9\\.\\-\\+]*/.+
```

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])* /name
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"branches": [
  {
    "category": "product_version_range",
    "name": ">4.2",
    // ...
  }
]
```

The version range `>4.2` is a valid `vsl` but not valid according to the `vers` specification.

### 6.2.19 CVSS for Fixed Products

For each item the fixed products group (`first_fixed` and `fixed`) it MUST be tested that a CVSS applying to this product has an environmental score of 0. The test SHALL pass if none of the Product IDs listed within product status `fixed` or `first_fixed` is found in products of any item of the `metrics` element.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/first_fixed[]
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status/fixed[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "product_status": {
      "fixed": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700"
      ]
    },
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
```

```

    "cvss_v3": {
      "baseScore": 6.5,
      "baseSeverity": "MEDIUM",
      "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:L/AC:L/PR:H/UI:R/S:U/C:H/I:H/A:H",
      "version": "3.1"
    }
  },
  "products": [
    "CSAFPID-9080700"
  ]
}
]
}
]

```

Neither the `environmentalScore` nor the properties `modifiedAvailabilityImpact`, `modifiedConfidentialityImpact`, `modifiedIntegrityImpact` nor the corresponding attributes in the `vectorString` have been set.

A tool MAY remove any Product IDs listed within product status `fixed` or `first_fixed` from products of all items of the `metrics` element.

Alternatively, a tool MAY set those environmental properties according to the CVSS version used that reduce score to 0 and compute the `environmentalScore` as quick fix. The following environmental properties have been identified:

- CVSS v2: `targetDistribution` to NONE
- CVSS v3: all of `modifiedAvailabilityImpact`, `modifiedConfidentialityImpact`, and `modifiedIntegrityImpact` to NONE
- CVSS v4: all of
  - `modifiedVulnAvailabilityImpact`, `modifiedVulnConfidentialityImpact`, and `modifiedVulnIntegrityImpact` to NONE and
  - `modifiedSubAvailabilityImpact`, `modifiedSubConfidentialityImpact`, and `modifiedSubIntegrityImpact` to NEGLIGIBLE

### 6.2.20 Additional Properties

It MUST be tested that there is no additional property in the CSAF document that was not defined in the CSAF JSON schema. This also applies for referenced schemas.

The relevant path for this test is:

/

To implement this test it is deemed sufficient to validate the CSAF document against a “strict” version schema that has all references integrated and sets `additionalProperties` respectively `unevaluatedProperties` to `false` at all appropriate places to detect additional properties.

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

    "cvss_v3": {
      "baseScore": 6.4,

```

```

    "baseSeverity": "MEDIUM",
    "custom_property": "any",
    "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:L/AC:H/PR:L/UI:N/S:C/C:N/I:H/A:L",
    "version": "3.1"
  }

```

The key `custom_property` is not defined in the JSON schema.

A tool MAY remove such keys as a quick fix.

### 6.2.21 Same Timestamps in Revision History

It MUST be tested that the timestamps of all items in the revision history are pairwise disjoint. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the comparison MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"revision_history": [
  {
    "date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "2.0.0",
    "summary": "Second version."
  },
  {
    "date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",
    "number": "1.0.0",
    "summary": "Initial version."
  }
]

```

The first and second revision have the same timestamp.

### 6.2.22 Document Tracking ID in Title

It MUST be tested that the `/document/title` does not contain the `/document/tracking/id`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/title
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"title": "OASIS_CSAF_TC-CSAF_2.1-2024-6-2-22-01: Recommended test: Document Tracking ID in Title",
"tracking": {
  // ...
  "id": "OASIS_CSAF_TC-CSAF_2.1-2024-6-2-22-01",
  // ...
}

```

The document title contains the document tracking id.

A tool MAY remove the document tracking id from the document title. It SHOULD also remove any separating characters including whitespace, colon, dash and brackets.

### 6.2.23 Usage of Deprecated CWE

For each item in the CWE array it MUST be tested that the CWE is not deprecated in the given version.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cwes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"cwes": [
  {
    "id": "CWE-596",
    "name": "DEPRECATED: Incorrect Semantic Object Comparison",
    "version": "4.13"
  }
]
```

The CWE-596 is deprecated in version 4.13.

A tool MAY suggest to replace the deprecated CWE with its replacement or closest equivalent.

### 6.2.24 Usage of Non-Latest CWE Version

For each item in the CWE array it MUST be tested that the latest CWE version available at the time of the last revision was used. The test SHALL fail if a later CWE version was used.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cwes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    "current_release_date": "2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z",
    // ...
  }
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cwes": [
      {
        "id": "CWE-256",
        "name": "Plaintext Storage of a Password",
```

```

    "version": "4.12"
  }
]
}
]

```

The CWE version listed is 4.12. However, version 4.13 was most recent version when the document was released on 2024-01-21T10:00:00.000Z.

A tool MAY suggest to use the latest version available at the time of the `current_release_date`. This is most likely also the overall latest CWE version as modifications to a CSAF document lead to a new `current_release_date`.

### 6.2.25 Usage of CWE Not Allowed for Vulnerability Mapping

For each item in the CWE array it MUST be tested that the vulnerability mapping is allowed.

Currently, this includes the two usage state `Allowed` and `Allowed-with-Review`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cwes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"cwes": [
  {
    "id": "CWE-20",
    "name": "Improper Input Validation",
    "version": "4.13"
  }
]

```

The usage of CWE-20 is discouraged as “is commonly misused in low-information vulnerability reports when lower-level CWEs could be used instead, or when more details about the vulnerability are available”. [cite](#)

### 6.2.26 Usage of CWE Allowed with Review for Vulnerability Mapping

For each item in the CWE array it MUST be tested that the vulnerability mapping is allowed without review.

Reasoning: CWEs marked with a vulnerability mapping state of `Allowed-with-Review` should only be used if a thorough review was done. This test helps to flag such mappings which can be used to trigger processes that ensure the extra review, e.g. by a senior analyst.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cwes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"cwes": [
  {
    "id": "CWE-1023",
    "name": "Incomplete Comparison with Missing Factors",
    "version": "4.13"
  }
]
```

The usage of CWE-1023 is allowed with review as the “CWE entry is a Class and might have Base-level children that would be more appropriate”. [cite](#)

### 6.2.27 Discouraged Product Status Remediation Combination

For each item in `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations` it MUST be tested that a Product is not member of a discouraged product status group remediation category combination. This takes indirect relations through Product Groups into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_status": {
  "known_not_affected": [
    "CSAFPID-9080700"
  ]
},
"remediations": [
  {
    "category": "fix_planned",
    "details": "The fix should be available in Q4 2024.",
    "product_ids": [
      "CSAFPID-9080700"
    ]
  }
]
```

For the product with product ID CSAFPID-908070 a fix is planned but the product was not affected at all.

### 6.2.28 Usage of Max UUID

It MUST be tested that the Max UUID is not used as sharing group id.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/distribution/sharing_group/id
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*



```
"distribution": {
  "sharing_group": {
    "id": "ffffffff-ffff-ffff-ffff-fffffffffffffff",
    "name": "Public"
  },
  // ...
},
```

The sharing group id uses the Max UUID.

A tool MAY remove the property `sharing_group` as a quick fix.

### 6.2.29 Usage of Nil UUID

It MUST be tested that the Nil UUID is not used as sharing group id.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/distribution/sharing_group/id
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"distribution": {
  "sharing_group": {
    "id": "ffffffff-ffff-ffff-ffff-fffffffffffffff",
    "name": "Public"
  },
  // ...
},
```

The sharing group id uses the Nil UUID.

A tool MAY remove the property `sharing_group` as a quick fix.

### 6.2.30 Usage of Sharing Group on TLP:CLEAR

It MUST be tested that no sharing group is used if the document is TLP: CLEAR.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/distribution/sharing_group
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"distribution": {
  "sharing_group": {
    "id": "ffffffff-ffff-ffff-ffff-fffffffffffffff",
    "name": "Public"
  },
  "tlp": {
    "label": "CLEAR"
  }
},
```

The CSAF document is TLP:CLEAR but a sharing group is given.

A tool MAY remove the property `sharing_group` as a quick fix.

### 6.2.31 Hardware and Software

For each product containing at least one of the Product Identification Helpers `serial_numbers` or `model_numbers` it MUST be tested that a relationship exists referencing this product.

This tests detects a potential situation where hardware and software have been mixed in the `product_tree`. Note: This test will fail if the CSAF document contains in its `product_tree` only hardware. However, this is expected and considered a good reason for the test to fail. This does not make the CSAF document invalid.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_id
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_id
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_id
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "branches": [
    {
      "branches": [
        {
          "branches": [
            {
              "category": "product_version",
              "name": "4.1",
              "product": {
                "name": "Example Company Controller A Firmware 4.1",
                "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070601",
                "product_identification_helper": {
                  "serial_numbers": [
                    "143-D-354"
                  ]
                }
              }
            }
          ]
        },
        {
          "category": "product_name",
          "name": "Controller A"
        }
      ]
    },
    {
      "category": "vendor",
      "name": "Example Company"
    }
  ]
}
```

The `product_tree` mentions the hardware product Example Company Controller A and combines it with the Firmware version 4.1.

### 6.2.32 Use of same Product Identification Helper for different Products

For each Product Identification Helper category it MUST be tested that the same value is not used for multiple products in this category.

This test detects a potentially incorrect constructed product tree. Note: This test will fail if the CSAF document contains in its `product_tree` the old and new name of a product that was renamed. However, this is expected and considered a good reason for the test to fail. This does not make the CSAF document invalid.

For the comparison, arrays need to be treated as unordered sets which need to be pairwise disjoint. When comparing two helper-objects' array properties whose items are themselves JSON objects (e.g. hashes or `file_hashes`), the array needs to be treated as an unordered set, and each object is compared by deep-equality of its key/value pairs (ignoring key-order).

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_id/product_identification_helper
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_id/product_identification_helper
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "branches": [
    {
      "branches": [
        {
          "branches": [
            {
              "category": "product_version",
              "name": "1.0",
              "product": {
                "name": "Example Company Product A 1.0",
                "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070601",
                "product_identification_helper": {
                  "serial_numbers": [
                    "143-D-354"
                  ]
                }
              }
            }
          ]
        },
        {
          "category": "product_version",
          "name": "2.0",
          "product": {
            "name": "Example Company Product A 2.0",
            "product_id": "CSAFPID-908070602",
            "product_identification_helper": {
              "serial_numbers": [
                "143-D-354"
              ]
            }
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    ]
  }
}
],
"category": "product_name",
"name": "Product A"
}
],
"category": "vendor",
"name": "Example Company"
}
]
}

```

Both products are identified by the same serial number 143-D-354.

### 6.2.33 Disclosure Date newer than Revision History

For each vulnerability, it MUST be tested that the `disclosure_date` is earlier or equal to the `date` of the newest item of the `revision_history` if the `disclosure_date` is in the past at the time of the test execution. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The result of the test is dependent upon the time of the execution of the test - it might change for a given CSAF document over time. However, the latest version of a CSAF document should always pass the test.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/disclosure_date
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"document": {
  // ...
  "distribution": {
    "tlp": {
      "label": "GREEN"
    }
  },
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    "current_release_date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
    // ...
    "initial_release_date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
    "revision_history": [
      {
        "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
        "number": "1",
        "summary": "Initial version."
      }
    ],
    "status": "final",

```

```

    "version": "1"
  },
  "vulnerabilities": [
    {
      "disclosure_date": "2024-02-24T10:00:00.000Z"
    }
  ]

```

The disclosure\_date is in the past but newer than the date of newest item in the revision\_history.

#### 6.2.34 Usage of Unregistered SSVC Decision Point Namespace

For each SSVC decision point given under selections, it MUST be tested the namespace is one of the case-sensitive registered namespaces.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/selections[]/namespace
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "ssvc_v1": {
            "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
            "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
            "selections": [
              {
                "name": "Technical Impact",
                "namespace": "some-yet-unknown-or-maybe-private-namespace",
                "values": [
                  "Total"
                ],
                "version": "1.0.0"
              }
            ],
            "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
          }
        },
        // ...
      }
    ]
  }
]

```

The namespace `some-yet-unknown-or-maybe-private-namespace` is not a registered namespace. Its decision point definitions might therefore not be known to the reader of the document.

### 6.2.35 Usage of Private Ssvc Decision Point Namespace in TLP:CLEAR Document

For each Ssvc decision point given under `selections`, it MUST be tested the namespace is not a private one if the document is labeled `TLP:CLEAR`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/selections[]/namespace
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
{
  "document": {
    // ...
    "distribution": {
      "tlp": {
        "label": "CLEAR"
      }
    },
    // ...
  }
  "vulnerabilities": [
    {
      "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
      "metrics": [
        {
          "content": {
            "ssvc_v1": {
              "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
              "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
              "selections": [
                {
                  "name": "Technical Impact",
                  "namespace": "x_custom",
                  "values": [
                    "Total"
                  ],
                  "version": "1.0.0"
                }
              ],
              "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
            }
          },
          // ...
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

The namespace `x_custom` is a private namespace. Its decision point definitions might therefore not be known to the reader of the document.

### 6.2.36 Usage of SSVC Decision Point Namespace with Extension in TLP:CLEAR Document

For each SSVC decision point given under `selections`, it MUST be tested the namespace does not use an extension if the document is labeled `TLP:CLEAR`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/selections[]/namespace
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
{
  "document": {
    // ...
    "distribution": {
      "tlp": {
        "label": "CLEAR"
      }
    },
    // ...
  }
  "vulnerabilities": [
    {
      "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
      "metrics": [
        {
          "content": {
            "ssvc_v1": {
              "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
              "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
              "selections": [
                {
                  "name": "Technical Impact",
                  "namespace": "ssvc/additional-technical-impacts",
                  "values": [
                    "Total"
                  ],
                  "version": "1.0.0"
                }
              ],
              "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
            }
          },
          // ...
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

The namespace contains the extension `additional-technical-impacts`. Its decision point definitions might therefore not be known to the reader of the document.

### 6.2.37 Usage of Unknown Ssvc Role

For each Ssvc object, it MUST be tested the `role` is one of the case-sensitive registered roles.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/role
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "ssvc_v1": {
            "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
            "role": "An unregistered role",
            "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
            "selections": [
              {
                "name": "Technical Impact",
                "namespace": "ssvc",
                "values": [
                  "Total"
                ],
                "version": "1.0.0"
              }
            ],
            "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
          }
        },
        // ...
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The role `An unregistered role` is not a registered role. Its structure might therefore not be known to the reader of the document.

### 6.2.38 Usage of Deprecated Profile

It MUST be tested that the `/document/category` does not start with `csaf_deprecated_`.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/category
```



*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"category": "csaf_deprecated_security_advisory",
```

The document category starts with `csaf_deprecated_`.

### 6.2.39 Profile Tests

This subsection structures the recommended tests for the profiles. Not all tests apply for all profiles. Tests SHOULD be skipped if the document category does not match the one given in the test. Each of the following tests SHOULD be treated as they where listed similar to the other tests.

#### 6.2.39.1 Missing Fixed Product

For each product listed in the product status group affected in any vulnerability, it MUST be tested that a corresponding version of the product is listed as fixed in the same vulnerability. The test MUST be skipped if there is a clear indication, that such a version of the product does not exist. Indicators include a remediation item with one of the categories `fix_planned`, `no_fix_planned` or `none_available` referring to the affected product. The test MUST NOT be skipped, if there is an indication, that such a version of the product might exist. Indicators include an affected product version range with the comparator `<` in the last version constraint and a remediation item with the categories `vendor_fix` referring to the affected product.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

```
csaf_security_advisory
```

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/product_status
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    // ...
    "product_status": {
      "known_affected": [
        "CSAFPID-9080700"
      ]
    },
    "remediations": [
      {
        "category": "vendor_fix",
        "details": "Update to the latest version, at least version 4.2.",
        "product_ids": [
          "CSAFPID-9080700"
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The fixed product is not listed in the advisory but there is a clear indication that such product exists as there is a remediation with category `vendor_fix`.

A tool MAY create the missing fixed product based on the data available in the advisory as a quick fix.

### 6.2.39.2 Language Specific Reasoning for Withdrawal

If the document language is specified but not English, it MUST be tested that exactly one item in document notes exists that has the language specific translation of the term `Reasoning for Withdrawal` as `title`. The `category` of this item MUST be `description`. If no language specific translation has been recorded, the test MUST be skipped and output an information to the user that no such translation is known.

A list of the language specific translations is kept at the OASIS CSAF TC.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

`csaf_withdrawn`

The relevant path for this test is:

`/document/notes`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"notes": [
  {
    "category": "summary",
    "text": "Das CSAF Document enthielt Beispieldaten und wurde zurückgezogen, um T",
    "title": "Begründung für die Zurückziehung"
  }
],
```

The note has the correct title. However, it uses the wrong category.

### 6.2.39.3 Language Specific Reasoning for Supersession

If the document language is specified but not English, it MUST be tested that exactly one item in document notes exists that has the language specific translation of the term `Reasoning for Supersession` as `title`. The `category` of this item MUST be `description`. If no language specific translation has been recorded, the test MUST be skipped and output an information to the user that no such translation is known.

A list of the language specific translations is kept at the OASIS CSAF TC.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

`csaf_superseded`

The relevant path for this test is:

`/document/notes`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"notes": [
  {
    "category": "summary",
    "text": "Das CSAF Dokument enthielt Beispieldaten und wurde ersetzt, um Testdat",
    "title": "Begründung für die Ersetzung"
  }
],
```

The note has the correct title. However, it uses the wrong category.

#### 6.2.39.4 Language Specific Superseding Document

If the document language is specified but not English, it **MUST** be tested that at least one item in document references exists that starts with the language specific translation of the term **Superseding Document** as **summary**. The **category** of this item **MUST** be **external**. If no language specific translation has been recorded, the test **MUST** be skipped and output an information to the user that no such translation is known.

A list of the language specific translations is kept at the OASIS CSAF TC.

The relevant value for `/document/category` is:

`csaf_superseded`

The relevant path for this test is:

`/document/references`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"references": [
  {
    "category": "self",
    "summary": "Ersetztes Dokument",
    "url": "https://example.com/.well-known/csaf/clear/2024/esa-2024-1234.json"
  }
],
```

The note has the correct title. However, it uses the wrong category.

#### 6.2.40 Product Description without Product Reference

For each product description it MUST be tested that it includes at least one of the elements `group_ids` or `product_ids`.

If the document language is English or unspecified, the product description can be identified by checking for a note containing the corresponding `category` and `title` combination from sec. For other languages, the language specific translation is used.

If no language specific translation has been recorded, the test MUST be skipped and output an information to the user that no translation for product description is known.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/notes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"notes": [
  {
    "category": "description",
    "text": "Product A is a local time tracking tool. It is mainly used by software
tracking systems.",
    "title": "Product Description"
  }
],
```

The given note item does not specify to which products it applies to.

#### 6.2.41 Old EPSS Timestamp

For each vulnerability, it MUST be tested that the youngest EPSS `timestamp` is not more than 15 days older than to the date of the newest item of the `revision_history` if the document status is `final` or `interim`. As the timestamps might use different timezones, the sorting MUST take timezones into account.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/epss/timestamp
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "distribution": {
    "tlp": {
      "label": "CLEAR"
    }
  },
  // ...
  "tracking": {
    // ...
    "revision_history": [
```

```

    {
      "date": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z",
      "number": "1",
      "summary": "Initial version."
    }
  ],
  "status": "final",
  // ...
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "epss": {
            "percentile": "0.999990000",
            "probability": "0.975570000",
            "timestamp": "2024-07-13T10:00:00.000Z"
          }
        },
        "products": [
          "CSAFPID-9080700"
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]

```

The document is in status `final` but the EPSS timestamp is more than 15 days older than the date of newest item in the `revision_history`.

#### 6.2.42 Inconsistent Product Identification Helper

For each product identification helper which resides in `branches`, it MUST be tested that the product identification helper contain at least the same information as the categorized strings. Information that cannot be represented in the specific product identification helper MUST be omitted from the comparison.

To implement this test it is deemed sufficient to follow the process below. It is based on a static mapping of branch categories to the corresponding part of the product identification helpers. The latter one are referred to as counterparts.

1. Determine counterpart in the specific product identification helper for all categories used along the path up to the product.
2. Check whether the counterparts in the product identification helper are set.
3. Check whether each set counterpart does not contain a wildcard unless the value of the categorized string would indicate that.
4. Check whether the version part aligns between the categorized strings and the product identification helper.
5. For CPE only: Check whether extra information is included in the CPE that is not in the categorized string. This might be a counterpart that is set but the corresponding categorized string is missing along the path.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/cpe
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/purl
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "branches": [
    {
      "category": "vendor",
      "name": "Example Company",
      "branches": [
        {
          "category": "product_name",
          "name": "Product A",
          "branches": [
            {
              "category": "product_version",
              "name": "2.2.0",
              "product": {
                "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
                "name": "Example Company Product A 2.2.0",
                "product_identification_helper": {
                  "cpe": "cpe:2.3:h:example:product_a:2.2.0:*:*:de:*:*:*:*"
                }
              }
            }
          ],
        },
        {
          "category": "product_version",
          "name": "2.3.0",
          "product": {
            "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080701",
            "name": "Example Company Product A 2.3.0",
            "product_identification_helper": {
              "cpe": "cpe:2.3:h:example:product_a:2.3.0:PL17:*:*:*:*:*"
            }
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

The CPE of the first product contains a language part that is not given through the categorized strings. The CPE of the second product contains an update part that is not given through the categorized strings.

### 6.2.43 Missing License Expression

It MUST be tested that the license expression is present and set.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/license_expression
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "lang": "en-US",
  "publisher": {
    // ...
  },
  // ...
}
```

The license expression is not defined.

#### 6.2.44 Deprecated License Identifier

It MUST be tested that all license identifier and exceptions used are not deprecated. This SHALL be tested for the SPDX license list and Aboutcode's "ScanCode LicenseDB". The test MAY be skipped for other license inventoring entities.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/license_expression
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"license_expression": "GFDL-1.1",
```

The license identifier GFDL-1.1 was deprecated as of version 3.0.

#### 6.2.45 Non-Existing License Identifier

It MUST be tested that all license identifier and exceptions used exist. This SHALL be tested for the SPDX license list and Aboutcode's "ScanCode LicenseDB". The test MAY be skipped for other license inventoring entities.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/license_expression
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"license_expression": "A-License-Identifier-That-Does-Not-Exist",
```

The license identifier does not exist in the SPDX license list.

### 6.2.46 Language Specific License Text

If the document language is specified but not English, and the `license_expression` contains license identifiers or exceptions that are not listed in the SPDX license list or Aboutcode's "ScanCode LicenseDB", it MUST be tested that exactly one item in document notes exists that has the language specific translation of the term `License` as title. The category of this item MUST be `legal_disclaimer`. If no language specific translation has been recorded, the test MUST be skipped and output an information to the user that no such translation is known.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/notes
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"document": {
  // ...
  "lang": "de-DE",
  "license_expression": "LicenseRef-www.example.com-no-work",
  "notes": [
    {
      "category": "summary",
      "text": "Es handelt sich nicht um ein urheberrechtliches Werk, da die Schöpfung
      "title": "Lizenz"
    }
  ],
  // ...
}
```

The note has the correct title. However, it uses the wrong category.

## 6.3 Informative Tests

Informative tests provide insights in common mistakes and bad practices. They MAY fail at a valid CSAF document. It is up to the issuing party to decide whether this was an intended behavior and can be ignore or should be treated. These tests MAY include information about recommended usage. A program MUST handle a test failure as a information.

### 6.3.1 Use of CVSS v2 as the only Scoring System

For each item in the list of metrics which contains the `cvss_v2` object under `content` it MUST be tested that is not the only scoring item present. The test SHALL pass if a second scoring object is available regarding the specific product.

One source might just provide CVSS v2. As long as at least one different source provides a different scoring system for the same products, the test passes.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*



```

"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "cvss_v2": {
            "version": "2.0",
            "vectorString": "AV:N/AC:L/Au:N/C:C/I:C/A:C",
            "baseScore": 10
          }
        },
        "products": [
          "CSAFPID-9080700"
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]

```

There is only a CVSS v2 score given for CSAFPID-9080700.

#### Recommendation:

It is recommended to (also) use the CVSS v4.0.

### 6.3.2 Use of CVSS v3.0

For each item in the list of metrics which contains the `cvss_v3` object under `content` it MUST be tested that CVSS v3.0 is not used.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```

/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/version
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss_v3/vectorString

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"cvss_v3": {
  "version": "3.0",
  "vectorString": "CVSS:3.0/AV:L/AC:L/PR:H/UI:R/S:U/C:H/I:H/A:H",
  "baseScore": 6.5,
  "baseSeverity": "MEDIUM"
}

```

The CVSS v3.0 is used.

Recommendation:

It is recommended to upgrade to CVSS v3.1.

A tool MAY upgrade to CVSS v3.1 as quick fix. However, if such quick fix is supported the tool SHALL also recompute the `baseScore` and `baseSeverity`. The same applies for `temporalScore` and `temporalSeverity` respectively `environmentalScore` and `environmentalSeverity` if the necessary fields for computing their value are present and set.

### 6.3.3 Missing CVE

It MUST be tested that the CVE number is given.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cve
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [  
  {  
    "title": "BlueKeep"  
  }  
]
```

The CVE number is not given.

Recommendation:

It is recommended to provide a CVE number to support the users efforts to find more details about a vulnerability and potentially track it through multiple advisories. If no CVE exists for that vulnerability, it is recommended to get one assigned.

### 6.3.4 Missing CWE

It MUST be tested that at least one CWE is given.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/cwes
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [  
  {  
    "cve": "CVE-2019-0708",  
    "title": "BlueKeep"  
  }  
]
```

No CWE number is given.

### 6.3.5 Use of Short Hash

It **MUST** be tested that the length of the hash value is not shorter than 64 characters.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/ hashes[]
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_identification_helper/ hashes[]/file_hashes[]
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_identification_helper/ hashes[]
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "name": "Product A",
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "product_identification_helper": {
        "hashes": [
          {
            "file_hashes": [
              {
                "algorithm": "md4",
                "value": "3202b50e2e5b2fcd75e284c3d9d5f8d6"
              }
            ],
            "filename": "product_a.so"
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

The length of the hash value is only 32 characters long.

### 6.3.6 Use of non-self referencing URLs Failing to Resolve

For each URL which is not in the category `self` it **MUST** be tested that it resolves with a HTTP status code from the 2xx (Successful) or 3xx (Redirection) class.

This test does not apply for any item in an array of type `references_t` with the category `self`. For details about the HTTP status code classes see [RFC7231].

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/document/acknowledgments[]/urls[]
/document/aggregate_severity/namespace
/document/distribution/tlp/url
```

```

/document/references[]/url
/document/publisher/namespace
/product_tree/branches[]/product/product_identification_helper/sbom_urls[]
/product_tree/branches[]/product/product_identification_helper/x_generic_uris[]/names
/product_tree/branches[]/product/product_identification_helper/x_generic_uris[]/uri
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/sbom_urls[]
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/x_generic
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/product_identification_helper/x_generic
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_identification_helper/sbom_urls[]
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_identification_helper/x_generic_uris[]/nam
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/product_identification_helper/x_generic_uris[]/uri
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_identification_helper/sbom_ur
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_identification_helper/x_gener
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/product_identification_helper/x_gener
/vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/urls[]
/vulnerabilities[]/references[]/url
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/url

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"references": [
  {
    "summary": "A URL that does not resolve with HTTP status code in the interval b
    "url": "https://example.invalid"
  }
]

```

The category is not set and therefore treated as its default value `external`. A request to that URL does not resolve with a status code from the 2xx (Successful) or 3xx (Redirection) class.

### 6.3.7 Use of self referencing URLs Failing to Resolve

For each item in an array of type `references_t` with the category `self` it MUST be tested that the URL referenced resolves with a HTTP status code less than 400.

This test will most likely fail if the CSAF document is in a status before the initial release. For details about the HTTP status code classes see [RFC7231].

The relevant paths for this test are:

```

/document/references[]/url
/vulnerabilities[]/references[]/url

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"references": [
  {
    "category": "self",
    "summary": "A URL that does not resolve with HTTP status code in the interval b
    "url": "https://example.invalid"
  }
]

```

The category is self and a request to that URL does not resolve with a status code from the 2xx (Successful) or 3xx (Redirection) class.

### 6.3.8 Spell Check

If the document language is given it MUST be tested that a spell check for the given language does not find any mistakes. The test SHALL be skipped if the document language is not set. It SHALL fail if the given language is not supported. The value of /document/category SHOULD NOT be tested if the CSAF document does not use the profile “CSAF Base”.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```

/document/acknowledgments[]/names[]
/document/acknowledgments[]/organization
/document/acknowledgments[]/summary
/document/aggregate_severity/text
/document/category
/document/distribution/text
/document/notes[]/audience
/document/notes[]/text
/document/notes[]/title
/document/publisher/issuing_authority
/document/publisher/name
/document/references[]/summary
/document/title
/document/tracking/aliases[]
/document/tracking/generator/engine/name
/document/tracking/revision_history[]/summary
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*name
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*product/name
/product_tree/branches[]/name
/product_tree/branches[]/product/name
/product_tree/full_product_names[]/name
/product_tree/product_groups[]/summary
/product_tree/relationships[]/full_product_name/name
/vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/names[]
/vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/organization
/vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/audience
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/text
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/title
/vulnerabilities[]/references[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/details
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/entitlements[]
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/restart_required/details
/vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/details
/vulnerabilities[]/title

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"document": {
  // ...

```

```

"lang": "en",
"notes": [
  {
    "category": "summary",
    "text": "Secruity researchers found multiple vulnerabilities in XYZ."
  }
],
// ...
}

```

There is a spelling mistake in Secruity.

### 6.3.9 Branch Categories

For each element of type `/$defs/full_product_name_t` in `/product_tree/branches` it **MUST** be tested that ancestor nodes along the path exist which use the following branch categories `vendor` -> `product_name` -> `product_version` in that order starting with the Product tree node.

Other branch categories can be used before, after or between the aforementioned branch categories without making the test invalid.

The relevant paths for this test are:

`/product_tree/branches`

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"branches": [
  {
    "category": "vendor",
    "name": "Example Company",
    "branches": [
      {
        "category": "product_name",
        "name": "Product A",
        "branches": [
          {
            "category": "patch_level",
            "name": "91",
            "product": {
              "product_id": "CSAFPID-0002",
              "name": "Example Company Product A Update 91"
            }
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]

```

The product CSAFPID-9080700 does not have any ancestor with the branch category `product_version`.

### 6.3.10 Usage of Product Version Range

For each element of type `/defs/branches_t` it MUST be tested that the `category` is not `product_version_range`.

It is usually hard decide for machines whether a product version matches a product version ranges. Therefore, it is recommended to avoid version ranges and enumerate versions wherever possible.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*category
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"category": "product_version_range",
```

The category `product_version_range` was used.

### 6.3.11 Usage of V as Version Indicator

For each element of type `/defs/branches_t` with `category` of `product_version` it MUST be tested that the value of `name` does not start with `v` or `V` before the version.

To implement this test it is deemed sufficient that the value of `name` does not match the following regex:

```
^[vV][0-9].*$
```

The relevant paths for this test are:

```
/product_tree/branches[](/branches[])*name
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"branches": [
  {
    "category": "product_version",
    "name": "v4.2",
    // ...
  }
]
```

The product version starts with a `v`.

### 6.3.12 Missing CVSS v4.0

For each item in the list of metrics it MUST be tested that a `cvss_v4` object is present.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"product_tree": {
  "full_product_names": [
    {
      "product_id": "CSAFPID-9080700",
      "name": "Product A"
    }
  ]
},
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "cvss_v3": {
            "version": "3.1",
            "vectorString": "CVSS:3.1/AV:N/AC:L/PR:N/UI:N/S:C/C:H/I:H/A:H",
            "baseScore": 10,
            "baseSeverity": "CRITICAL"
          }
        },
        "products": [
          "CSAFPID-9080700"
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

There is no CVSS v4.0 score given for CSAFPID-9080700.

### 6.3.13 Usage of Non-Latest SSVC Decision Point Version

For each SSVC decision point given under `selections` with the namespace of `ssvc`, it MUST be tested the latest decision point `version` available at the time of the `timestamp` was used. The test SHALL fail if a later `version` was used.

A list of all valid decision points including their values is available at the [SSVC repository](#).

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/selections[]
```



*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "ssvc_v1": {
            "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
            "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
            "selections": [
              {
                "name": "Mission Impact",
                "namespace": "ssvc",
                "values": [
                  "Non-Essential Degraded"
                ],
                "version": "1.0.0"
              }
            ],
            "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
          }
        },
        // ...
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

At the timestamp 2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z version 2.0.0 of the Ssvc decision point Mission Impact was already available.

#### 6.3.14 Usage of Private Ssvc Decision Point Namespace in non TLP:CLEAR Document

For each Ssvc decision point given under selections, it MUST be tested the namespace is not a private one if the document is not labeled TLP:CLEAR.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/selections[]/namespace
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
{
  "document": {
    // ...
    "distribution": {
      "tlp": {
        "label": "GREEN"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    },
    // ...
  }
  "vulnerabilities": [
    {
      "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
      "metrics": [
        {
          "content": {
            "ssvc_v1": {
              "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
              "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
              "selections": [
                {
                  "name": "Technical Impact",
                  "namespace": "x_custom",
                  "values": [
                    "Total"
                  ],
                  "version": "1.0.0"
                }
              ],
              "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
            }
          },
          // ...
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}

```

The namespace `x_custom` is a private namespace. Its decision point definitions might therefore not be known to the reader of the document.

### 6.3.15 Usage of Ssvc Decision Point Namespace with Extension in non TLP:CLEAR Document

For each Ssvc decision point given under `selections`, it MUST be tested the namespace does not use an extension if the document is not labeled TLP:CLEAR.

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc_v1/selections[]/namespace
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

{
  "document": {
    // ...
    "distribution": {
      "tlp": {
        "label": "GREEN"
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  },
  // ...
}
"vulnerabilities": [
  {
    "cve": "CVE-1900-0001",
    "metrics": [
      {
        "content": {
          "ssvc_v1": {
            "id": "CVE-1900-0001",
            "schemaVersion": "1-0-1",
            "selections": [
              {
                "name": "Technical Impact",
                "namespace": "ssvc/additional-technical-impacts",
                "values": [
                  "Total"
                ],
                "version": "1.0.0"
              }
            ],
            "timestamp": "2024-01-24T10:00:00.000Z"
          }
        },
        // ...
      }
    ]
  }
]
}

```

The namespace contains the extension `additional-technical-impacts`. Its decision point definitions might therefore not be known to the reader of the document.

### 6.3.16 Grammar Check

If the document language is given it **MUST** be tested that a grammar check for the given language does not find any mistakes. The test **SHALL** be skipped if the document language is not set. It **SHALL** fail if the given language is not supported.

The relevant paths for this test are:

```

/document/acknowledgments[]/summary
/document/aggregate_severity/text
/document/distribution/text
/document/notes[]/audience
/document/notes[]/text
/document/notes[]/title
/document/publisher/issuing_authority
/document/references[]/summary
/document/title

```

```

/document/tracking/revision_history[]/summary
/product_tree/product_groups[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/audience
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/text
/vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/title
/vulnerabilities[]/references[]/summary
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/details
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/entitlements[]
/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/restart_required/details
/vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/details
/vulnerabilities[]/title

```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```

"document": {
  // ...
  "lang": "en",
  "notes": [
    {
      "category": "summary",
      "text": "The security hardening guide must followed for ensure secure operation
    ]
  // ...
}

```

Multiple grammar mistakes exist:

- a **be** is missing between **must** and **followed**
- the **for** needs to be a **to**
- a **products** is also incorrect as **a** indicates singular.

### 6.3.17 Use of Unregistered License

It **MUST** be tested that the all license identifiers and exceptions are listed either in the official SPDX license identifier list or AboutCode's "ScanCode LicenseDB".

The relevant path for this test is:

```
/document/license_expression
```

*Example 1 (which fails the test):*

```
"license_expression": "LicenseRef-www.example.com-no-work-pd",
```

The `license_expression` contains a license identifier that is neither listed in the official SPDX license identifier list nor AboutCode's "ScanCode LicenseDB".

## 6.4 Presets

A test preset is a predefined set of tests that was given a name. It MAY contain any number of tests. Two presets MAY overlap. The content of a preset MAY vary in different CSAF versions. A CSAF validator MUST support every official preset that solely include tests that are implemented by the CSAF validator. A CSAF validator MAY provide or support additional presets. A CSAF validator MUST implement all tests for any supported preset. Names of presets not defined in this CSAF standard SHALL have the following prefix before their name:

- `x_`: for any CSAF validator specific preset. > Multiple CSAF validators might use the same preset name for different sets of tests. > Users are advised to carefully check the documentation of the tools to avoid incorrect assumptions.
- `org_` followed by an organization identifier and an underscore (`_`): for any preset specified by an organization as a part of a public definition that can be implemented by different CSAF validators. The organization identifier MUST only use the characters identified by the pattern `[0-9a-zA-Z-]`. The organization identifier MUST be registered with the OASIS CSAF TC.
- `csaf_`: for any preset defined later on by the OASIS CSAF TC.

Official presets are defined in different parts of the standard.

### 6.4.1 Presets defined through Test Subsections

The following presets are defined through subsections of the test section:

- `mandatory`: all tests given in section 6.1
- `recommended`: all tests given in section 6.2
- `informative`: all tests given in section 6.3

### 6.4.2 Presets defined through Conformance Targets

The following presets are defined through conformance targets:

- `schema`: Check against the JSON schema (see section sec)
- `basic`: `schema` + `mandatory` (see section sec)
- `extended`: `basic` + `recommended` (see section sec)
- `full`: `extended` + `informative` (see section sec)

As presets are sets, the operator `+` MUST be interpreted as the union operation.

### 6.4.3 Additional Presets

Additional presets are defined as follows:

- `external-request-free`:
  - Description: Any test that can be executed without a request into the Internet or a different network. > This is intended to be used for browser-based tools as external requests may result in CORS issues. > Request over network to a tool that is delivered with or an install requirement for a CSAF validator are not considered external.
  - Set: `full` excluding tests 6.3.6 and 6.3.7
- `consistent-revision-history`:
  - Description: Any test that is related to the revision history and ensures consistence within it.
  - Set:
    - \* 6.1.14
    - \* 6.1.18
    - \* 6.1.19

- \* 6.1.21
- \* 6.1.22
- \* 6.1.37
- \* 6.2.4
- \* 6.2.5
- \* 6.2.6
- \* 6.2.21
- \* 6.2.33

- consistent-date-times:

- Description: Any test that is related to timestamps in CSAF and avoids invalid situations.
- Set:
  - \* 6.1.37
  - \* 6.1.45
  - \* 6.1.49
  - \* 6.1.51
  - \* 6.1.52
  - \* 6.1.53

## 7 Distributing CSAF documents

This section lists requirements and roles defined for distributing CSAF documents. The first subsection provides all requirements - the second one the roles. It is mandatory to fulfill the basic role “CSAF publisher”. The last section provides specific rules for the process of retrieving CSAF documents.

### 7.1 Requirements

The requirements in this subsection are consecutively numbered to be able to refer to them directly. The order does not give any hint about the importance. Not all requirements have to be fulfilled to conform to this specification - the sets of requirements per conformance clause are defined in section 7.2.

#### 7.1.1 Requirement 1: Valid CSAF document

The document is a valid CSAF document (cf. Conformance clause 1).

#### 7.1.2 Requirement 2: Filename

The CSAF document has a filename according to the rules in section 5.1.

#### 7.1.3 Requirement 3: TLS

The CSAF document is per default retrievable from a website which uses TLS for encryption and server authenticity. The CSAF document **MUST NOT** be downloadable from a location which does not encrypt the transport when crossing organizational boundaries to maintain the chain of custody.

#### 7.1.4 Requirement 4: TLP:CLEAR

If the CSAF document is labeled TLP:CLEAR, it **MUST** be freely accessible.

This does not exclude that such a document is also available in an access protected customer portal. However, there **MUST** be one copy of the document available for people without access to the portal.

Reasoning: If an advisory is already in the media, an end user should not be forced to collect the pieces of information from a press release but be able to retrieve the CSAF document.

#### 7.1.5 Requirement 5: TLP:AMBER, TLP:AMBER+STRICT and TLP:RED

CSAF documents labeled TLP:AMBER, TLP:AMBER+STRICT or TLP:RED **MUST** be access protected. If they are provided via a web server this **SHALL** be done under a different path than for TLP:CLEAR, TLP:GREEN and unlabeled CSAF documents. TLS client authentication, access tokens or any other automatable authentication method **SHALL** be used.

An issuing party **MAY** agree with the recipients to use any kind of secured drop at the recipients' side to avoid putting them on their own website. However, it **MUST** be ensured that the documents are still access protected.

#### 7.1.6 Requirement 6: No Redirects

Redirects **SHOULD NOT** be used. If they are inevitable only HTTP Header redirects are allowed.

Reasoning: Clients should not parse the payload for navigation and some, as e.g. `curl`, do not follow any other kind of redirects.

If any redirects are used, there **SHOULD NOT** be more than 5 and **MUST NOT** be more than 10 consecutive redirects.

### 7.1.7 Requirement 7: provider-metadata.json

The party MUST provide a valid `provider-metadata.json` according to the schema [CSAF provider metadata](#) for its own metadata. The `publisher` object SHOULD match the one used in the CSAF documents of the issuing party but can be set to whatever value a CSAF aggregator SHOULD display over any individual `publisher` values in the CSAF documents themselves.

This information is used to collect the data for CSAF aggregators, listers and end users. The CSAF provider metadata schema ensures the consistency of the metadata for a CSAF provider across the ecosystem. Other approaches, like extracting the `publisher` object from CSAF documents, are likely to fail if the object differs between CSAF documents.

It is suggested to put the file `provider-metadata.json` adjacent to the ROLIE feed documents (requirement 15) or in the main directory adjacent to the year folders (requirement 14), `changes.csv` (requirement 13) and the `index.txt` (requirement 12). Suggested locations to store the `provider-metadata.json` are:

- <https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json>
- <https://domain.tld/security/data/csaf/provider-metadata.json>
- <https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/provider-metadata.json>
- <https://domain.tld/security/csaf/provider-metadata.json>

*Example 1 (minimal with ROLIE document):*

```
{
  "$schema": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/provider.json",
  "canonical_url": "https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json",
  "distributions": [
    {
      "rolie": {
        "feeds": [
          {
            "last_updated": "2024-01-24T20:20:56.169Z",
            "summary": "All TLP:CLEAR advisories of Example Company.",
            "tlp_label": "CLEAR",
            "url": "https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf/feed-tlp-clear.json"
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  },
  "last_updated": "2024-01-24T20:20:56.169Z",
  "list_on_CSAF_aggregators": true,
  "metadata_version": "2.1",
  "mirror_on_CSAF_aggregators": true,
  "public_openpgp_keys": [
    {
      "fingerprint": "8F5F267907B2C4559DB360DB2294BA7D2B2298B1",
      "url": "https://keys.example.net/vks/v1/by-fingerprint/8F5F267907B2C4559DB360DB2294BA7D2B2298B1"
    }
  ],
  "publisher": {
    "category": "vendor",
    "name": "Example Company ProductCERT",
    "namespace": "https://psirt.example.com"
  }
},
```



```
"role": "csaf_trusted_provider"
}
```

The `maintained_until` and `maintained_from` properties can be used to indicate that the distributions contained in `provider-metadata.json` at the given `canonical_url` are only guaranteed to be maintained until or after the specified date and time. This SHOULD be used to support a transition period between CSAF 2.0 and CSAF 2.1 (cf. section sec). CSAF downloaders (cf. section sec) and programs retrieving or providing a `provider-metadata.json` SHOULD evaluate this property and emit a warning if the current date is less than 90 days away from `maintained_until` and an error if the current date exceeds `maintained_until`. The programs MAY provide a non-default option to use the `provider-metadata.json` anyway. Furthermore, such programs SHOULD evaluate the `maintained_from` property and output a warning if the current date is still before the `maintained_from` timestamp.

If a CSAF publisher (cf. section 7.2.1) does not provide the `provider-metadata.json`, an aggregator SHOULD contact the CSAF publisher in question to determine the values for `list_on_CSAF_aggregators` and `mirror_on_CSAF_aggregators`. If that is impossible or if the CSAF publisher is unresponsive the following values MUST be used:

```
"list_on_CSAF_aggregators": true,
"mirror_on_CSAF_aggregators": false
```

This prevents that CSAF documents of a CSAF publisher which have been collected by one CSAF aggregator A are mirrored again on a second CSAF aggregator B. Such cascades are prone to outdated information. If the first aggregator A collects the CSAF documents on best effort and B copies the files from A and announces that this is done weekly, one might assume that B's CSAF documents are more recent. However, that is not the case as B's information depends on A.

### 7.1.8 Requirement 8: `security.txt`

In the `security.txt` there MUST be at least one field CSAF which points to the `provider-metadata.json` (requirement 7). If this field indicates a web URI, then it MUST begin with "https://" (as per section 2.7.2 of [RFC7230]). See [SECURITY-TEXT] for more details.

The `security.txt` was published as [RFC9116] in April 2022. The CSAF field was officially added through the IANA registry.

*Examples 1:*

```
CSAF: https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json
CSAF: https://domain.tld/security/data/csaf/provider-metadata.json
CSAF: https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/provider-metadata.json
CSAF: https://domain.tld/security/csaf/provider-metadata.json
```

It is possible to advertise more than one `provider-metadata.json` by adding multiple CSAF fields, e.g. in case of changes to the organizational structure through mergers and acquisitions. However, this SHOULD NOT be done and removed as soon as possible. A valid use case for temporarily including multiple entries would be a transition phase between different CSAF versions, in which documents and provider metadata of both versions are served simultaneously (cf. section sec). If one of the URLs fulfills requirement 9, it MUST be set as the first CSAF entry in the `security.txt`.

### 7.1.9 Requirement 9: Well-known URL for provider-metadata.json

The URL path `/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json` under the main domain of the issuing authority serves directly the `provider-metadata.json` according to requirement 7. That implies that redirects SHALL NOT be used. The use of the scheme “HTTPS” is required. See [RFC8615] for more details.

*Example 1:*

```
https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json
```

As specified in sec, the value of `canonical_url` MAY differ from the URL that was requested as a part of this requirement. Such state is intended and MUST NOT be reported as error.

### 7.1.10 Requirement 10: DNS path

Assuming that the organization’s main domain is `domain.tld`, the DNS record `csaf.data.security.domain.tld` SHALL resolve to the IP address of a web server which serves directly the `provider-metadata.json` according to requirement 7.

The `domain.tld` is just a placeholder for the organization’s main domain. For the organization with the main domain being `example.com`, the necessary DNS record is `csaf.data.security.example.com`.

That implies that redirects SHALL NOT be used. The use of the scheme “HTTPS” is required.

### 7.1.11 Requirement 11: One folder per year

The CSAF documents MUST be located within folders named `<YYYY>` where `<YYYY>` is the year given in the value of `/document/tracking/initial_release_date`.

*Examples 1:*

2024

2023

### 7.1.12 Requirement 12: index.txt

The file `index.txt` MUST contain the list of all filenames of CSAF documents which are located in the sub-directories with their filenames. Each entry SHALL be terminated by a newline sequence. The last entry MAY skip the newline sequence.

If different TLP labels are used, multiple `index.txt` exist. However, they are located in the corresponding folders and contain only the filenames of files for that TLP label.

*Example 1:*

2023/esa-2023-09953.json

2022/esa-2022-02723.json

2021/esa-2021-31916.json

2021/esa-2021-03676.json

This can be used to download all CSAF documents.

### 7.1.13 Requirement 13: `changes.csv`

The file `changes.csv` contains a list of CSAF documents in the current TLP level that were changed recently. Therefore, it MUST contain the filename as well as the value of `/document/tracking/current_release_date` for each CSAF document in the sub-directories without a heading; lines MUST be sorted by the `current_release_date` timestamp with the latest one first. The `changes.csv` SHALL be a valid comma separated values format as defined by [RFC4180] without double quotes.

Note: As a consequence of section sec Requirement 2 for filenames and section sec Requirement for directory names, there must not be any characters within the `changes.csv` that would require quoting.

Example 1:

```
2023/esa-2023-09953.json,2023-07-01T10:09:07Z
2021/esa-2021-03676.json,2023-07-01T10:09:01Z
2022/esa-2022-02723.json,2022-04-17T15:08:41Z
2021/esa-2021-31916.json,2022-03-01T06:01:00Z
```

Note: As CSAF 2.0 requires quotes, an [RFC4180] parser can read both format revisions.

### 7.1.14 Requirement 14: Directory listings

Server-side generated directory listing SHALL be enabled to support manual navigation.

As the content of the directory listing is more or less static, there is little to no benefit in using of client-side scripts. Moreover, client-side scripts, like JavaScript, are usually not evaluated in text-based browsers and are also hard to check programmatically.

### 7.1.15 Requirement 15: ROLIE feed

Resource-Oriented Lightweight Information Exchange (ROLIE) is a standard to ease discovery of security content. ROLIE is built on top of the Atom Publishing Format and Protocol, with specific requirements that support publishing security content. All CSAF documents with the same TLP level MUST be listed in a single ROLIE feed (summary feed). Additional ROLIE feeds might exist that contain only a subset of the CSAF documents. The selection criteria SHOULD be described through the summary. At least one of the feeds

- TLP:CLEAR
- TLP:GREEN

MUST exist. Each ROLIE feed document MUST be a JSON file that conforms with [RFC8322].

The ROLIE feed document MUST contain a feed category with the registered ROLIE information type `csaf`. The scheme for this category MUST be `urn:ietf:params:rolie:category:information-type`.

Example 1:

```
{
  "feed": {
    "id": "example-csaf-feed-tlp-clear",
    "title": "Example CSAF feed (TLP:CLEAR)",
    "link": [
      {
        "rel": "self",
        "href": "https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/feed-tlp-clear.json"
```

```

    }
  ],
  "category": [
    {
      "scheme": "urn:ietf:params:rolie:category:information-type",
      "term": "csaf"
    }
  ],
  "updated": "2024-01-01T12:00:00.000Z",
  "entry": [
    {
      "id": "ESA-2024-001",
      "title": "Multiple vulnerabilities in ABC 0.0.2",
      "link": [
        {
          "rel": "self",
          "href": "https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/2024/esa-2024-001.json"
        },
        {
          "rel": "hash",
          "href": "https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/2024/esa-2024-001.json."
        },
        {
          "rel": "signature",
          "href": "https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/2024/esa-2024-001.json."
        }
      ],
      "published": "2024-01-01T11:00:00.000Z",
      "updated": "2024-01-01T12:00:00.000Z",
      "summary": {
        "content": "Multiple vulnerabilities were fixed in ABC 0.0.3"
      },
      "content": {
        "type": "application/json",
        "src": "https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/2024/esa-2024-001.json"
      },
      "format": {
        "schema": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/csaf.json",
        "version": "2.1"
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

Any existing hash file (requirement 18) MUST be listed in the corresponding entry of the ROLIE feed as an item of the array `link` having the `rel` value of `hash`. Any existing signature file (requirement 19) MUST be listed in the corresponding entry of the ROLIE feed as an item of the array `link` having the `rel` value of `signature`.

#### 7.1.16 Requirement 16: ROLIE service document

The use and therefore the existence of ROLIE service document is optional. If it is used, each ROLIE service document MUST be a JSON file that conforms with [RFC8322] and lists the ROLIE feed documents. Additionally, it can also list the

corresponding ROLIE category documents. The ROLIE service document SHOULD use the filename `service.json` and reside next to the `provider-metadata.json`.

*Example 1:*

```
{
  "service": {
    "workspace": [
      {
        "title": "Public CSAF feed",
        "collection": [
          {
            "title": "Example CSAF feed (TLP:CLEAR)",
            "href": "https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/csaf/feed-tlp-clear.json",
            "categories": {
              "category": [
                {
                  "scheme": "urn:ietf:params:rolie:category:information-type",
                  "term": "csaf"
                }
              ]
            }
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

#### 7.1.17 Requirement 17: ROLIE category document

The use and therefore the existence of ROLIE category document is optional. If it is used, each ROLIE category document MUST be a JSON file that conforms with [RFC8322]. A ROLIE category document SHOULD reside next to the corresponding ROLIE feed. ROLIE categories SHOULD be used for to further dissect CSAF documents by one or more of the following criteria:

- document category
- document language
- values of the branch category within the Product Tree including but not limited to
  - vendor
  - product\_family
  - product\_name
  - product\_version
- type of product

*Examples 1:*

```
CPU
Firewall
Monitor
PLC
```

Printer  
Router  
Sensor  
Server

- areas or sectors, the products are used in

*Examples 2:*

Chemical  
Commercial  
Communication  
Critical Manufacturing  
Dams  
Energy  
Healthcare  
Water

- any other categorization useful to the consumers

*Example 3:*

```
{
  "categories": {
    "category": [
      {
        "term": "Example Company Product A"
      },
      {
        "term": "Example Company Product B"
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

#### 7.1.18 Requirement 18: Integrity

All CSAF documents SHALL have at least one hash file computed with a secure cryptographic hash algorithm (e.g. SHA-512 or SHA-3) to ensure their integrity. The filename is constructed by appending the file extension which is given by the algorithm.

MD5 and SHA1 SHOULD NOT be used.

*Example 1:*

File name of CSAF document: esa-2022-02723.json  
File name of SHA-256 hash file: esa-2022-02723.json.sha256  
File name of SHA-512 hash file: esa-2022-02723.json.sha512

The file content SHALL start with the first byte of the hexadecimal hash value. Any subsequent data (like a filename) which is optional SHALL be separated by at least one space.

*Example 2:*

ea6a209dba30a958a78d82309d6cdcc6929fcb81673b3dc4d6b16fac18b6ff38 esa-2022-02723.json

If a ROLIE feed exists, each hash file **MUST** be listed in it as described in requirement 15.

#### 7.1.19 Requirement 19: Signatures

All CSAF documents **SHALL** have at least one OpenPGP signature file which is provided under the same filename which is extended by the appropriate extension. This signature **SHALL** be presented as an ASCII armored file. See [RFC4880] for more details.

*Example 1:*

File name of CSAF document: `esa-2022-02723.json`

File name of signature file: `esa-2022-02723.json.asc`

If a ROLIE feed exists, each signature file **MUST** be listed in it as described in requirement 15.

At all times, signatures **MUST** remain valid for a minimum of 30 days and ideally for at least 90 days. When executing CSAF document signatures, the signing party **SHOULD** adhere to or surpass the prevailing best practices and recommendations regarding key length. Tools **SHOULD** treat the violation of the rules given in the first sentence as:

- warning if the signature is only valid for 90 days or less at the time of the verification,
- error, which **MAY** be ignored by the user per option, if the signature is only valid for 30 days or less at the time of the verification and
- error if the signature is expired at the time of the verification.

#### 7.1.20 Requirement 20: Public OpenPGP Key

The public part of the OpenPGP key used to sign the CSAF documents **MUST** be available. This key file **SHALL** be presented as an ASCII armored file. It **SHOULD** also be available at a public key server.

For example, the public part of the OpenPGP key could be placed in a directory `openpgp` adjacent to the `provider-metadata.json`.

The OpenPGP key **SHOULD** have a strength that is considered secure.

Guidance on OpenPGP key strength can be retrieved from technical guidelines of competent authorities.

#### 7.1.21 Requirement 21: List of CSAF providers

The file `aggregator.json` **MUST** be present and valid according to the JSON schema [CSAF aggregator](#). It **MUST NOT** be stored adjacent to a `provider-metadata.json`.

Suggested locations to store the `aggregator.json` are:

- `https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/aggregator.json`
- `https://domain.tld/security/data/aggregator/csaf/aggregator.json`
- `https://psirt.domain.tld/advisories/aggregator/csaf/aggregator.json`
- `https://domain.tld/security/aggregator/csaf/aggregator.json`

The file `aggregator.json` **SHOULD** only list the latest version of the metadata of a CSAF provider.

*Example 1:*

```

{
  "$schema": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/aggregator.json",
  "aggregator": {
    "category": "lister",
    "contact_details": "Example CSAF Lister can be reached at contact_us@lister.example",
    "issuing_authority": "This service is provided as it is. It is free for everybody",
    "name": "Example CSAF Lister",
    "namespace": "https://lister.example"
  },
  "aggregator_version": "2.1",
  "canonical_url": "https://aggregator.example/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/aggregator",
  "csaf_providers": [
    {
      "metadata": {
        "last_updated": "2024-01-12T20:20:56.169Z",
        "publisher": {
          "category": "vendor",
          "name": "Example Company ProductCERT",
          "namespace": "https://psirt.example.com"
        }
      },
      "role": "csaf_provider",
      "url": "https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json"
    },
    {
      "metadata": {
        "last_updated": "2024-01-12T21:35:38.000Z",
        "publisher": {
          "category": "coordinator",
          "name": "Example Coordinator CERT",
          "namespace": "https://cert.example"
        }
      },
      "role": "csaf_trusted_provider",
      "url": "https://cert.example/advisories/csaf/provider-metadata.json"
    }
  ],
  "last_updated": "2024-01-24T22:35:38.978Z"
}

```

### 7.1.22 Requirement 22: Two disjoint issuing parties

The file `aggregator.json` (requirement 21) lists at least two disjoint CSAF providers (including CSAF trusted providers) or one CSAF publisher and one CSAF provider (including CSAF trusted provider).

### 7.1.23 Requirement 23: Mirror

The CSAF documents for each issuing party that is mirrored MUST be in a different folder. The folder name SHOULD be retrieved from the name of the issuing authority. This folders MUST be adjacent to the `aggregator.json` (requirement 21). Each such folder MUST at least:

- provide a `provider-metadata.json` for the current issuing party.
- provide the ROLIE feed document according to requirement 15 which links to the local copy of the CSAF document.



*Example 1:*

```

{
  "$schema": "https://docs.oasis-open.org/csaf/csaf/v2.1/schema/aggregator.json",
  "aggregator": {
    "category": "aggregator",
    "contact_details": "Example Aggregator can be reached at contact_us@aggregator.ex",
    "issuing_authority": "This service is provided as it is. It is free for everybody",
    "name": "Example Aggregator",
    "namespace": "https://aggregator.example"
  },
  "aggregator_version": "2.1",
  "canonical_url": "https://aggregator.example/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/aggregator",
  "csaf_providers": [
    {
      "metadata": {
        "last_updated": "2024-01-12T20:20:56.169Z",
        "publisher": {
          "category": "vendor",
          "name": "Example Company ProductCERT",
          "namespace": "https://psirt.example.com"
        },
        "role": "csaf_provider",
        "url": "https://www.example.com/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json"
      },
      "mirrors": [
        "https://aggregator.example/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/Example_Company_ProductCERT_metadata.json"
      ]
    },
    {
      "metadata": {
        "last_updated": "2024-01-12T21:35:38.000Z",
        "publisher": {
          "category": "coordinator",
          "name": "Example Coordinator CERT",
          "namespace": "https://cert.example"
        },
        "role": "csaf_trusted_provider",
        "url": "https://cert.example/advisories/csaf/provider-metadata.json"
      },
      "mirrors": [
        "https://aggregator.example/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/Example_Coordinator_CERT_metadata.json"
      ]
    }
  ],
  "last_updated": "2024-01-24T22:35:38.978Z"
}

```

### 7.1.24 Requirement 24: HTTP User-Agent

Access to the CSAF related files and directories provided, for both metadata and documents, **MUST** be allowed independent of the value of HTTP User-Agent.

Limit the value of HTTP User-Agents to a certain set would hinder adoption of tools retrieving the files.

The only exception is that the temporary blocking of certain HTTP User-Agents is allowed to mitigate an ongoing security incident (e.g. a DoS attack on the web server serving the CSAF files). However, a less severe measure with a similar effect **SHOULD** be used. CSAF related files and directories **SHOULD** be exempted from temporary blocking. The temporary blocking **SHOULD** be removed as soon as possible, at latest two weeks after the security incident process was completed.

Also confer to the TC's guidance on content delivery networks and caching.

### 7.1.25 Requirement 25: Access-Control-Allow-Origin

For any CSAF documents and related metadata, the web server **SHOULD** set the HTTP header `Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *`.

The HTTP header enables users to access the CSAF data with web browser based clients.

The value of the HTTP header **MAY** be altered to allow just specified domains. In such case, the response **SHOULD** follow the recommendations of [FETCH] including but not limited to those about the Vary header.

Such restriction may allow the allow-listed domains to send credentials.

## 7.2 Roles

This subsection groups the requirements from the previous subsection into named sets which target the roles with the same name. This allows end users to request their suppliers to fulfill a certain set of requirements. A supplier can use roles for advertising and marketing.

The roles "CSAF publisher", "CSAF provider", and "CSAF trusted provider" are intended directly for issuing parties and form the first group. The second group consists of the roles "CSAF lister" and "CSAF aggregator". They collect data from the aforementioned issuing parties of the first group and provide them in a single place to aid in automation. Parties of the second group can also issue their own advisories. However, they **MUST** follow the rules for the first group for that.

Both, a CSAF lister and a CSAF aggregator, decide based on their own rules which issuing parties to list respectively to mirror. However, an issuing party **MAY** apply to be listed or mirrored.

Issuing parties **MUST** indicate through the value `false` in `list_on_CSAF_aggregators` if they do not want to be listed. Issuing parties **MUST** indicate through the value `false` in `mirror_on_CSAF_aggregators` if they do not want to be mirrored.

The values are independent. The combination of the value `false` in `list_on_CSAF_aggregators` and `true` in `mirror_on_CSAF_aggregators` implies that the issuing party does not want to be listed without having the CSAF documents mirrored. Therefore, a CSAF aggregator can list that issuing party if it mirrors the files.

### 7.2.1 Role: CSAF publisher

A distributing party satisfies the "CSAF publisher" role if the party:

- satisfies the requirements 1 to 4 in section 7.1.
- distributes only CSAF documents on behalf of its own.

### 7.2.2 Role: CSAF provider

A CSAF publisher satisfies the “CSAF provider” role if the party fulfills the following three groups of requirements:

Firstly, the party:

- satisfies the “CSAF publisher” role profile.
- additionally satisfies the requirements 5 to 7, 24 and 25 in section 7.1.

Secondly, the party:

- satisfies at least one of the requirements 8 to 10 in section 7.1.

Thirdly, the party:

- satisfies the requirements 11 to 14 in section 7.1 or requirements 15 to 17 in section 7.1.

If the party uses the ROLIE-based distribution, it MUST also satisfy requirements 15 to 17. If it uses the directory-based distribution, it MUST also satisfy requirements 11 to 14.

### 7.2.3 Role: CSAF trusted provider

A CSAF provider satisfies the “CSAF trusted provider” role if the party:

- satisfies the “CSAF provider” role profile.
- additionally satisfies the requirements 18 to 20 in section 7.1.

### 7.2.4 Role: CSAF lister

A distributing party satisfies the “CSAF lister” role if the party:

- satisfies the requirements 6, 21, 22, 24 and 25 in section 7.1.
- uses the value `lister` for `/aggregator/category`.
- does not list any mirror pointing to a domain under its own control.

The purpose of this role is to provide a list of URLs where to find CSAF documents. It is not assumed that the list will be complete.

### 7.2.5 Role: CSAF aggregator

A distributing party satisfies the “CSAF aggregator” role if the party:

- satisfies the requirements 1 to 6 and 21 to 25 in section 7.1.
- uses the value `aggregator` for `/aggregator/category`.
- lists a mirror for at least two disjoint issuing parties pointing to a domain under its own control.
- links the public part of the OpenPGP key used to sign CSAF documents for each mirrored issuing party in the corresponding `provider-metadata.json`.
- provides for each CSAF document that is mirrored a signature (requirement 19) and a hash (requirement 18). Both SHALL be listed in the ROLIE feed. If the issuing party provides those files for a CSAF document, they SHOULD be copied as well. If the issuing party does not provide those files, they SHALL be created by the CSAF aggregator. Such a signature does not imply any liability of CSAF aggregator for the content of the corresponding CSAF document. It just confirms that the CSAF document provided has not been modified after being downloaded from the issuing party. A CSAF aggregator MAY add additional signatures and hashes for a CSAF document.

Additionally, a CSAF aggregator MAY list one or more issuing parties that it does not mirror.

The purpose of this role is to provide a single point where CSAF documents can be retrieved. Multiple CSAF aggregators are expected to exist around the world. None of them is required to mirror all CSAF documents of all issuing parties. CSAF aggregators can be provided for free or as a paid service.

To aid in automation, CSAF aggregators MAY mirror CSAF documents from CSAF publishers. Regarding the terms of use they SHOULD consult with the issuing party. The purpose of this option is that a consumer can retrieve CSAF documents from a CSAF publisher as if this issuing party would be a CSAF trusted provider. To reach that goal, a CSAF aggregator collects the CSAF documents from the CSAF publisher and mirrors it. The collection process MAY be automated or manual. CSAF aggregators announce the collection interval through the field `update_interval` in the corresponding item of the CSAF publishers list (`csaf_publishers`) in their `aggregator.json`. To minimize the implementation efforts and process overhead, a CSAF aggregator MAY upload the CSAF documents of a CSAF publisher into an internal instance of a CSAF provider software. Such construct is called “CSAF proxy provider” as it can be mirrored by the CSAF aggregator software. However, such a CSAF proxy provider MUST NOT be accessible from anyone else than the CSAF aggregator itself. Otherwise, that would violate the second rule of section 7.2.1. Therefore, it is recommended to expose the CSAF proxy provider only on localhost and allow the access only from the CSAF aggregator software.

## 7.3 Retrieving rules

The retrieving process executes in two phases: Finding the `provider-metadata.json` (requirement 7 in section 7.1) and retrieving CSAF documents.

A retrieving party SHOULD do the first phase every time. Based on the setup and use case of the retrieving party it MAY choose to do it less often, e.g. only when adding new or updating distributing parties. In that case, it SHOULD to check regularly whether new information is available.

### 7.3.1 Finding provider-metadata.json

**Direct locating:** The following process SHOULD be used to determine the location of a `provider-metadata.json` (requirement 7 in section 7.1) based on the main domain of the issuing party.

First, an ordered list of possible `provider-metadata.json` candidates SHOULD be generated in the following way:

1. Checking the Well-known URL (requirement 9 in section 7.1)
2. Checking the `security.txt` (requirement 8 in section 7.1)
3. If the above steps fail to produce any candidates: Checking the DNS path (requirement 10 in section 7.1)

Second, select one or more `provider-metadata.json` to use from the list of valid candidates. If the retrieving party is only able to process one `provider-metadata.json`, the first one in the list SHOULD be chosen.

The term “checking” used in the listing above SHOULD be understood as follows: Try to access the resource and test whether the response provides an expected result as defined in the requirement in section 7.1. If that is the case, the response is added to the list of candidates - otherwise not. If the resource yields more than one response, the responses are added to the list in the order they are returned from the resource.

**Indirect locating:** A retrieving party MAY choose to determine the location of a `provider-metadata.json` by retrieving its location from an `aggregator.json` (requirement 21 in section 7.1) of a CSAF lister or CSAF aggregator.

### 7.3.2 Retrieving CSAF documents

Given a `provider-metadata.json`, the following process SHOULD be used to retrieve CSAF documents:

1. Parse the `provider-metadata.json` to determine whether the directory-based (requirements 11 to 14 in section 7.1) or ROLIE-based distribution (requirements 15 to 17 in section 7.1) is used. If both are present, the ROLIE information SHOULD be preferred.

2. For any CSAF trusted provider, the hash and signature files (requirements 18 to 19 in section 7.1) SHOULD be retrieved together with the CSAF document. They MUST be checked before further processing the CSAF document.
3. Test the CSAF document against the schema.
4. Execute mandatory tests on the CSAF document.

## 7.4 Transition between CSAF 2.0 and CSAF 2.1

This subsection details the process that SHOULD be followed when transitioning the distribution of documents from CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1. Different scenarios can be encountered:

- Providers will continue to use CSAF 2.0. This SHOULD be avoided, as the CSAF ecosystem greatly profits from adoption of the new standard version.
- Providers will immediately upgrade all documents as well as the `provider-metadata.json` to CSAF 2.1. While this benefits the adoption of CSAF 2.1, consumers that still rely on CSAF 2.0 are cut off.
- Providers will begin a transition period, in which they continue to serve existing documents in CSAF 2.0, gradually updating the existing document base (e.g. by using a CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter as described in sec) and publishing new documents using CSAF 2.1.

### 7.4.1 Announcing the Transition

In the last scenario, a temporary parallel distribution of CSAF 2.0 and CSAF 2.1 documents and provider metadata is RECOMMENDED. The provider SHOULD announce a transition period containing three points in time: - The begin of the transition period, where the provider is starting to serve CSAF 2.1 documents, while CSAF 2.0 being authoritative. > It is expected that the CSAF 2.1 files can be used in production from this point onward. - The roll-over-date at which CSAF 2.1 becomes authoritative but CSAF 2.0 is still supported. - The end of the transition period, after which CSAF 2.0 is not supported, i.e. maintained, any more.

The announcement MAY contain also the following information:

- The first date, when CSAF 2.1 documents are available and automatically retrievable from the server through a CSAF 2.1 `provider-metadata.json`. > This might be a public beta prior to the begin of the transition period. > However, those documents SHOULD NOT be used in production as they may be unstable due to their beta status.
- The last date, when CSAF 2.0 documents are available and automatically retrievable from the server through a CSAF 2.0 `provider-metadata.json`. > This date is usually at the end of the transition period.

### 7.4.2 Transition Process for a CSAF Provider

The following process SHOULD be followed:

- A `provider-metadata.json` in conformance to CSAF 2.0 SHOULD be placed at `/.well-known/csaf/v2.0/provider-metadata.json`.
  - Its `canonical_url` MUST be set to an URL corresponding to the `/.well-known/csaf/v2.0/provider-metadata.json` path. > The property `maintained_until` was not defined in CSAF 2.0 and therefore cannot be used - > otherwise it would be set to the end of the transition period.
  - The URL SHALL also be added as an entry in the `security.txt`, if used.
- A `provider-metadata.json` in conformance to CSAF 2.1 SHOULD be placed at `/.well-known/csaf/v2.1/provider-metadata.json`.
  - Its `canonical_url` MUST be set to an URL corresponding to the `/.well-known/csaf/v2.1/provider-metadata.json` path.

- Optionally, the property `maintained_from` can be set to an appropriate date in the future, if the service is not considered stable yet. > The transition officially starts at the date and time noted in the property `maintained_from` as this is the point in time > when both CSAF 2.0 and CSAF 2.1 documents are retrievable in production-grade quality.
- The URL SHALL also be added to the `security.txt`, if used.
- At the begin of the transition period, a `provider-metadata.json` in conformance to CSAF 2.0 SHOULD be placed at `/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json`.
  - The content of the resource SHALL be equal to the resource accessible at `/.well-known/csaf/v2.0/provider-metadata.json`.
  - For file-based distribution servers, this MAY be achieved by using a symlink. Redirects SHALL NOT be used (cf. to requirement sec)
- Sometime before the roll-over-date, all existing CSAF 2.0 documents SHOULD be converted to CSAF 2.1.
- At the roll-over-date, a `provider-metadata.json` in conformance to CSAF 2.1 SHOULD be placed at `/.well-known/csaf/provider-metadata.json`.
  - The content of the resource SHALL be equal to the resource accessible at `/.well-known/csaf/v2.1/provider-metadata.json`.
  - For file-based distribution servers, this MAY be achieved by using a symlink. Redirects SHALL NOT be used (cf. to requirement sec)
- At the end of the transition period, the URL of the CSAF 2.0 `provider-metadata.json` SHOULD be removed from the `security.txt`.
  - The unmaintained CSAF 2.0 directory structure and files SHOULD be removed or made inaccessible.
  - The CSAF 2.0 documents MAY be archived.

If a DNS path (cf. section sec) is used instead of the well-known URL, the same process SHOULD be followed taking the rules below into account:

- The leading and authoritative `provider-metadata.json` is always served according to the DNS path requirement (see section sec). > This implies that a CSAF 2.0 `provider-metadata.json` is served at the beginning and > replaced by the CSAF 2.1 `provider-metadata.json` at the roll-over-date.
- It is recommended to use the folders `v2.0` and `v2.1` to differentiate between the CSAF versions.

#### 7.4.3 Archive of CSAF Document from Previous Version

The following rules apply for the archival of CSAF document from a previous version:

- This archive SHOULD be located in `/.well-known/csaf/archive/` and use the file name `v2.0.tar.zst`, `v2.0.tar.bz2` or `v2.0.tar.xz`.
- The CSAF documents within the archive MUST be sorted into folders according to requirement 11 in section sec and be accompanied by a hash according to requirement 18 sec.
- The archive MUST be accompanied by a hash of the same algorithm.
- Existing signatures MAY also be included into the archive. It is NOT RECOMMENDED to renew the signatures in the archive unless the archive is updated with new content.

#### 7.4.4 Transition Process for a CSAF Aggregator

Similarly, to the transition process for a CSAF provider, the same process SHOULD be used for a CSAF aggregator. It is RECOMMENDED to use the following URLs during the process:

- `/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/aggregator.json` for the currently valid aggregator metadata.
- `/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/v2.0/aggregator.json` for a valid CSAF 2.0 aggregator.json
- `/.well-known/csaf-aggregator/v2.1/aggregator.json` for a valid CSAF 2.1 aggregator.json



A CSAF 2.1 aggregator MUST only sync and list CSAF 2.1 publishers and providers.

## 8 Safety, Security, and Data Protection Considerations

CSAF documents are based on JSON, thus the security considerations of [RFC8259] apply and are repeated here as service for the reader: > Generally, there are security issues with scripting languages. JSON is a subset of JavaScript but excludes assignment and invocation. > > Since JSON's syntax is borrowed from JavaScript, it is possible to use that language's `eval()` function to parse most JSON texts > (but not all; certain characters such as U+2028 LINE SEPARATOR and U+2029 PARAGRAPH SEPARATOR are legal in JSON but not JavaScript). > This generally constitutes an unacceptable security risk, since the text could contain executable code along with data declarations. > The same consideration applies to the use of `eval()`-like functions in any other programming language in which JSON texts conform to > that language's syntax.

In addition, CSAF documents may be rendered by consumers in various human-readable formats like HTML or PDF. Thus, for security reasons, CSAF producers and consumers SHALL adhere to the following:

- CSAF producers SHOULD NOT emit messages that contain HTML, even though GitHub-flavoured Markdown is permitted. To include HTML, source code, or any other content that may be interpreted or executed by a CSAF consumer, e.g. to provide a proof-of-concept, the issuing party SHALL use Markdown's fenced code blocks or inline code option.
- Deeply nested markup can cause a stack overflow in the Markdown processor [GFMENG]. To reduce this risk, CSAF consumers SHALL use a Markdown processor that is hardened against such attacks. **Note:** One example is the GitHub fork of the `cmark` Markdown processor [GFMCMARK].
- To reduce the risk posed by possibly malicious CSAF files that do contain arbitrary HTML (including, for example, `data:image/svg+xml`), CSAF consumers SHALL either disable HTML processing (for example, by using the `--safe` option in the `cmark` Markdown processor) or run the resulting HTML through an HTML sanitizer.
- To reduce the risk posed by possibly malicious links within a CSAF document (including, for example, `javascript:` links), CSAF consumers SHALL either remove all actions from links (for example, by displaying them as standard text) or render only those actionable that are known to be safe (for example, determining that via the media type). CSAF consumers that are not prepared to deal with the security implications of formatted messages SHALL NOT attempt to render them and SHALL instead fall back to the corresponding plain text messages. As also any other programming code can be contained within a CSAF document, CSAF consumers SHALL ensure that none of the values of a CSAF document is run as code. Moreover, it SHALL be treated as unsafe (user) input. > Additional, supporting mitigation measures like retrieving only CSAF documents from trusted sources and check their integrity and > signature before parsing the document SHOULD be in place to reduce the risk further.

The distribution requirements of CSAF data allow to specify domains as the value of the HTTP header `Access-Control-Allow-Origin`. While a wildcard (\*) as header value usually prevents implementing browsers from sending credentials during the CORS request, the restriction to specified domains often enables sending credentials. Allowing several specified domains results in using dynamics on the server, which can widen the attack surface by using more code and configuration. Furthermore, this might reveal information about internal structures, e.g. which domains are allowed to send credentials, or which tools are used. Given that credentials from a browser are a potent tool in the event of an attack, restricting the origins seems to imply a higher risk and therefore less secure than allowing all domains without credentials.

As setting the `Access-Control-Allow-Origin` header potentially allows for cross site request forgery, it SHOULD only be served on files and directories containing CSAF data. For any restricted feeds, standard authentication methods SHOULD be used that are not send by web browsers if the wildcard is used as header value.

## 9 Conformance

In the only subsection of this section, the conformance targets and clauses are listed. The clauses, matching the targets one to one, are listed in separate sub-subsections of the targets listing subsection.

Informative Comments:

The order in which targets, and their corresponding clauses appear is somewhat arbitrary as there is no natural order on such diverse roles participating in the document exchanging ecosystem.

Except for the target **CSAF document**, all other 24 targets span a taxonomy of the complex CSAF ecosystems existing in and between diverse security advisory generating, sharing, and consuming communities.

In any case, there are no capabilities organized in increasing quality levels for targets because the security advisory sharing communities follow the chain link model. Instead, a single minimum capability level for every target is given to maintain important goals of providing a common framework for security advisories:

- Fast production, sharing, and actionable consumption of security advisories
- Consistent end to end automation through collaborating actors
- Clear baseline across the communities per this specification
- Additional per-community cooperative extensions which may flow back into future updates of this specification

### 9.1 Conformance Targets

This document defines requirements for the CSAF file format and for certain software components that interact with it. The entities (“conformance targets”) for which this document defines requirements are:

- **CSAF document:** A security advisory text document in the format defined by this document.
- **CSAF downloader:** A program that retrieves CSAF documents in an automated fashion.
- **CSAF producer:** A program which emits output in the CSAF format.
- **CSAF direct producer:** An analysis tool which acts as a CSAF producer.
- **CSAF converter:** A CSAF producer that transforms the output of an analysis tool from its native output format into the CSAF format.
- **CVRF CSAF converter:** A CSAF producer which takes a CVRF document as input and converts it into a valid CSAF document.
- **CSAF content management system:** A program that is able to create, review and manage CSAF documents and is able to preview their details as required by CSAF viewer.
- **CSAF post-processor:** A CSAF producer that transforms an existing CSAF document into a new CSAF document, for example, by removing or redacting elements according to sharing policies.
- **CSAF modifier:** A CSAF post-processor which takes a CSAF document as input and modifies the structure or values of properties. The output is a valid CSAF document.
- **CSAF translator:** A CSAF post-processor which takes a CSAF document as input and translates values of properties into another language. The output is a valid CSAF document.
- **CSAF consumer:** A program that reads and interprets a CSAF document.
- **CSAF viewer:** A CSAF consumer that reads a CSAF document, displays a list of the results it contains, and allows an end user to view each result in the context of the artifact in which it occurs.
- **CSAF management system:** A program that is able to manage CSAF documents and is able to display their details as required by CSAF viewer.
- **CSAF asset matching system:** A program that connects to or is an asset database and is able to manage CSAF documents as required by CSAF management system as well as matching them to assets of the asset database.
- **CSAF basic validator:** A program that reads a document and checks it against the JSON schema and performs mandatory tests.
- **CSAF extended validator:** A CSAF basic validator that additionally performs recommended tests.
- **CSAF full validator:** A CSAF extended validator that additionally performs informative tests.



- **CSAF SBOM matching system:** A program that connects to or is an SBOM database and is able to manage CSAF documents as required by CSAF management system as well as matching them to SBOM components of the SBOM database.
- **CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter:** A CSAF producer which takes a CSAF 2.0 document as input and converts it into a valid CSAF 2.1 document.
- **CSAF library:** A library that implements CSAF data capabilities.
- **CSAF library with basic validation:** A CSAF library that also satisfies the conformance target “CSAF basic validator”.
- **CSAF library with extended validation:** A CSAF library that also satisfies the conformance target “CSAF extended validator”.
- **CSAF library with full validation:** A CSAF library that also satisfies the conformance target “CSAF full validator”.
- **CSAF withdrawer:** A CSAF post-processor that transforms a given CSAF into a withdrawn one.
- **CSAF superseder:** A CSAF post-processor that transforms a given CSAF into a superseded one.

### 9.1.1 Conformance Clause 1: CSAF document

A text file or data stream satisfies the “CSAF document” conformance profile if it:

- conforms to the syntax and semantics defined in section 2.2.
- conforms to the syntax and semantics defined in section 2.3.
- conforms to the syntax and semantics defined in section 3.
- satisfies at least one profile defined in section 4.
- conforms to the syntax and semantics defined in section 5.
- does not fail any mandatory test defined in section 6.1.

### 9.1.2 Conformance Clause 2: CSAF producer

A program satisfies the “CSAF producer” conformance profile if the program:

- produces output in the CSAF format, according to the conformance profile “CSAF document”.
- satisfies those normative requirements in section 3 and 8 that are designated as applying to CSAF producers.

### 9.1.3 Conformance Clause 3: CSAF direct producer

An analysis tool satisfies the “CSAF direct producer” conformance profile if the analysis tool:

- satisfies the “CSAF producer” conformance profile.
- additionally satisfies those normative requirements in section 3 that are designated as applying to “direct producers” or to “analysis tools”.
- does not emit any objects, properties, or values which, according to section 3, are intended to be produced only by converters.

### 9.1.4 Conformance Clause 4: CSAF converter

A converter satisfies the “CSAF converter” conformance profile if the converter:

- satisfies the “CSAF producer” conformance profile.
- additionally satisfies those normative requirements in section 3 that are designated as applying to converters.
- does not emit any objects, properties, or values which, according to section 3, are intended to be produced only by direct producers.

### 9.1.5 Conformance Clause 5: CVRF CSAF converter

A program satisfies the “CVRF CSAF converter” conformance profile if the program fulfills the following two groups of requirements:

Firstly, the program:

- satisfies the “CSAF producer” conformance profile.
- takes only CVRF documents as input.
- outputs a warning that an additional property was detected and not converted if it detects an additional property in the input. The CVRF CSAF converter SHALL ignore that additional property during the conversion.
- additionally satisfies the normative requirements given below.

Secondly, the program fulfills the following for all items of:

- value type `string` with format `date-time`: If the value contains a 60 in the seconds place, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST replace the seconds and their fractions with 59.999999. In addition, the converter outputs a warning that leap seconds are now prohibited in CSAF and the value has been replaced. The CVRF CSAF converter SHOULD indicate in such warning message whether the value was a valid leap second or not.
- type `/defs/branches_t`: If any `prod:Branch` instance has the type `Realm` or `Resource`, the CVRF CSAF converter replaces those with the category `product_name`. In addition, the converter outputs a warning that those types do not exist in CSAF and have been replaced with the category `product_name`.
- type `/defs/version_t`: If any element doesn't match the semantic versioning, replace the all elements of type `/defs/version_t` with the corresponding integer version. For that, CVRF CSAF converter sorts the items of `/document/tracking/revision_history` by number ascending according to the rules of CVRF. Then, it replaces the value of `number` with the index number in the array (starting with 1). The value of `/document/tracking/version` is replaced by value of `number` of the corresponding revision item. The match MUST be calculated by the original values used in the CVRF document. If this conversion was applied, for each Revision the original value of `cvrf:Number` MUST be set as `legacy_version` in the converted document.
- `/document/acknowledgments[]/organization` and `/vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/organization`: If more than one `cvrf:Organization` instance is given, the CVRF CSAF converter converts the first one into the `organization`. In addition, the converter outputs a warning that information might be lost during conversion of document or vulnerability acknowledgment.
- `/document/category`:
  - If the `cvrf:DocumentType` is `Security Advisory` (case-insensitive), the CVRF CSAF converter MUST try to convert the data into a valid CSAF document in this profile according to CSAF 2.1.

A tool MAY offer rules to create the missing fixed products from version ranges, if applicable.

If the CVRF CSAF converter is unable to create a valid CSAF 2.1 document according to the profile, it SHALL set the `category` value to `csaf_deprecated_security_advisory`.

- If one or more CVRF elements containing an `xml:lang` attribute exist and their value is English or the document language of the CVRF document is unspecified, the following rules apply:
  - \* If the `cvrf:DocumentTitle` starts with the string `Superseded` or the `cvrf:DocumentType` starts with `Superseded` (case-insensitive), the CVRF CSAF converter MUST try to convert all data into a valid CSAF document in the profile “Superseded” according to CSAF 2.1.
  - \* If the `cvrf:DocumentTitle` starts with the string `Withdrawn` or the `cvrf:DocumentType` starts with `Withdrawn` (case-insensitive), the CVRF CSAF converter MUST try to convert all data into a valid CSAF document in the profile “Withdrawn” according to CSAF 2.1. > A tool MAY provide a non-default option to remove or transform certain or all elements the hinder the creation of a valid CSAF document according > to the profile.

A tool MAY support this detection for other languages.

If the CVRF CSAF converter is unable to create a valid CSAF 2.1 document according to the profile, it SHALL set the `category` according to the conversion rules and output a warning a potentially withdrawn CSAF document was created which would result in an invalid CSAF.

- `/document/lang`: If one or more CVRF elements containing an `xml:lang` attribute exist and contain the exact same value, the CVRF CSAF converter converts this value into `lang`. If the values of `xml:lang` attributes are not equal, the CVRF CSAF converter outputs a warning that the language could not be determined and possibly a document with multiple languages was produced. In addition, it SHOULD also present all values of `xml:lang` attributes as a set in the warning.
- `/document/license_expression`: If any `cvrf:Note` item with `Type Legal Disclaimer` contains a valid SPDX license expression, the CVRF CSAF converter SHALL convert this value into `license_expression`. In addition, the converter outputs an information that license expression was found and set as document license expression.
- `/document/notes`: If any `cvrf:Note` item contains one of the `category` and `title` combinations specified in 3.2.2.8, where the `title` is extended, the CVRF CSAF converter SHALL try to identify whether that extension is a specific product name, version or family. In such case, the CVRF CSAF converter SHALL try to add the corresponding products to the note item and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and products have been assigned to it. Such warning MUST also include the note and the assigned products. If the CVRF CSAF converter is unable to create a valid object, it MUST remove the reference to the products and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and no products could be assigned to it.
- `/document/publisher/name` and `/document/publisher/namespace`: Sets the value as given in the configuration of the program or the corresponding argument the program was invoked with. If values from both sources are present, the program SHOULD prefer the latter one. The program SHALL NOT use hard-coded values.
- `/document/tracking/id`: If the element `cvrf:ID` contains any newline sequence or leading or trailing white space, the CVRF CSAF converter removes those characters. In addition, the converter outputs a warning that the ID was changed.
- `/product_tree/relationships[]`: If more than one `prod:FullProductName` instance is given, the CVRF CSAF converter converts the first one into the `full_product_name`. In addition, the converter outputs a warning that information might be lost during conversion of product relationships.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/cwes[]`:
  - The CVRF CSAF converter MUST remove all preceding and trailing white space from the `name`.
  - The CVRF CSAF converter MUST determine the CWE specification version the given CWE was selected from by using the latest version that matches the `id` and `name` exactly and was published prior to the value of `/document/tracking/current_release_date` of the source document. If no such version exist, the first matching version published after the value of `/document/tracking/current_release_date` of the source document SHOULD be used. > This is done to create a deterministic conversion.
  - If the CWE does not match at all, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST omit this CWE and output a warning that an invalid CWE was found and has been removed.
  - If a `vuln:CWE` instance refers to a CWE category or view, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST omit this instance and output a warning that this CWE has been removed as its usage is not allowed in vulnerability mappings.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/disclosure_date`: If a `vuln:ReleaseDate` was given, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST convert its value into the `disclosure_date` element.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/ids`: If a `vuln:ID` element is given, the CVRF CSAF converter converts it into the first item of the `ids` array.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]`:
  - For any CVSS v4 element, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST compute the `baseSeverity` from the `baseScore` according to the rules of the applicable CVSS standard. (CSAF CVRF v1.2 predates CVSS v4.0.)
  - For any CVSS v3 element, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST compute the `baseSeverity` from the `baseScore` according to the rules of the applicable CVSS standard.
  - If no `product_id` is given, the CVRF CSAF converter appends all Product IDs which are listed under `../product_status` in the arrays `known_affected`, `first_affected` and `last_affected`. If

none of these arrays exist, the CVRF CSAF converter outputs an error that no matching Product ID was found for this score element.

- If a `vectorString` is missing, the CVRF CSAF converter outputs an error that the CVSS element could not be converted as the CVSS vector was missing. A CVRF CSAF converter MAY offer a configuration option to delete such elements.
- If there are CVSS v3.0 and CVSS v3.1 Vectors available for the same product, the CVRF CSAF converter discards the CVSS v3.0 information and provide in CSAF only the CVSS v3.1 information.
- To determine, which minor version of CVSS v3 is used and to evaluate a CVSS v4 that was wrongly inserted in a CVSS v3 element, the CVRF CSAF converter uses the following steps:

1. Retrieve the CVSS version from the CVSS vector, if present.

*Example 1:*

```
CVSS:3.1/AV:N/AC:L/PR:N/UI:N/S:U/C:N/I:N/A:H => 3.1
```

2. Retrieve the CVSS version from the CVSS element's namespace, if present. The CVRF CSAF converter outputs a warning that this value was guessed from the element's namespace.

*Example 2:*

```
xmlns:cvssv31="https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v3.1.xsd"
<!-- -->
<cvssv31:ScoreSetV3>
```

is handled the same as

*Example 3:*

```
<ScoreSetV3 xmlns="https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v3.1.xsd">
```

3. Retrieve the CVSS version from the CVSS namespace given in the root element, if present. The CVRF CSAF converter outputs a warning that this value was guessed from the global namespace. If more than one CVSS namespace is present and the element is not clearly defined via the namespace, this step MUST be skipped without a decision.

*Example 4:*

```
xmlns:cvssv3="https://www.first.org/cvss/cvss-v3.0.xsd" => 3.0
```

4. Retrieve the CVSS version from a config value, which defaults to 3.0. (As CSAF CVRF v1.2 predates CVSS v3.1.) The CVRF CSAF converter outputs a warning that this value was taken from the config.

- `/vulnerabilities[]/metrics/cvss_v4`: If an external reference in the vulnerability linking to the official FIRST.org CVSS v4.0 calculator exists, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST convert the vector given in the fragment into a `cvss_v4` object linked to all affected products of the vulnerability. > A tool MAY implement an option to suppress this conversion. If the CVRF CSAF converter converter is unable to construct a valid object with the information given, the CVRF CSAF converter converter SHALL remove the invalid `cvss_v4` object and output a warning that the automatic conversion of the CVSS v4.0 reference failed. Such warning SHOULD include the specific error that occurred.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/notes`: If any `vuln>Note` item contains one of the `category` and `title` combinations specified in 3.2.4.11, where the `title` is extended, the CVRF CSAF converter SHALL try to identify whether that extension is a specific product name, version or family. In such case, the CVRF CSAF converter SHALL try to add the corresponding products to the note item and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and products have been assigned to it. Such warning MUST also include the note and the assigned products. If the CVRF CSAF converter is unable to create a valid object, it MUST remove the reference to the products and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and no products could be assigned to it.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]`:
  - If neither `product_ids` nor `group_ids` are given, the CVRF CSAF converter appends all Product IDs which are listed under `../product_status` in the arrays `known_affected`, `first_affected` and `last_affected` into `product_ids`. If none of these arrays exist, the CVRF CSAF converter outputs an error that no matching Product ID was found for this remediation element.
  - The CVRF CSAF converter MUST convert any remediation with the type `Vendor Fix` into the category `optional_patch` if the product in question is in one of the product status groups "Not Affected" or "Fixed"

for this vulnerability. Otherwise, the category `vendor_fix` MUST be set. If multiple products are associated with the remediation - either directly or through a product group - and the products belong to different product status groups, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST duplicate the remediation, change the category in one instance to `optional_patch` and distribute the products accordingly as stated by the conversion rule.

- The CVRF CSAF converter MUST convert any remediation with the type `None Available` into the category `fix_planned` if the product in question is also listed in a remediation of the type `Vendor Fix` with a `Date` in the future or no `Date` at all. Consequently, the product MUST be removed from the remediation of the category `vendor_fix`. If it was the last product in that remediation, the remediation MUST be removed.
  - The CVRF CSAF converter MUST remove any product from a remediation with the type `None Available` if the product in question is also listed in a remediation of the type `Vendor Fix` with a `Date` in the past or to the exact same time. If it was the last product in that remediation, the remediation MUST be removed.
  - In any other case, the CVRF CSAF converter MUST preserve the product in the remediation of the category `none_available`.
  - The CVRF CSAF converter MUST output a warning if a remediation was added, deleted or the value of the category was changed, including the products it was changed for.
- The CVRF CSAF converter SHALL provide the JSON path where the warning occurred together with the warning.

### 9.1.6 Conformance Clause 6: CSAF content management system

A CSAF content management system satisfies the “CSAF content management system” conformance profile if the content management system:

- satisfies the “CSAF producer” conformance profile.
- satisfies the “CSAF viewer” conformance profile.
- provides at least the following management functions:
  - create new CSAF documents
  - prefill CSAF documents based on values given in the configuration (see below)
  - create a new version of an existing CSAF document
  - checkout old versions of a CSAF document
  - show all differences between versions of a CSAF document
  - list all CSAF documents within the system
  - delete CSAF documents from the system
  - review CSAF documents in the system
  - approve CSAF documents
  - search for CSAF documents by values of required fields at document-level or their children within the system
  - search for CSAF documents by values of `cve` within the system
  - search for CSAF documents based on properties of `product_tree`
  - filter on all properties which it is required to search for
  - export of CSAF documents
  - show an audit log for each CSAF document
  - identify the latest version of CSAF documents with the same `/document/tracking/id`
  - suggest a `/document/tracking/id` based on the given configuration.

- track of the version of CSAF documents automatically and increment according to the versioning scheme (see also subsections of 3.1.11) selected in the configuration.
- check that the document version is set correctly based on the changes in comparison to the previous version (see also subsections of 3.1.11).
- suggest to use the document status *interim* if a CSAF document is updated more frequent than the given threshold in the configuration (default: 3 weeks)
- suggest to publish a new version of the CSAF document with the document status *final* if the document status was *interim* and no new release has been done during the given threshold in the configuration (default: 6 weeks) > Note that the terms “publish”, “publication” and their derived forms are used in this conformance profile independent of whether the specified target group is the public or a closed group.
- support the following workflows:
  - \* “New Advisory”: create a new advisory, request a review, provide review comments or approve it, resolve review comments; if the review approved it, the approval for publication can be requested; if granted the document status changes to *final* (or *interim* based on the selection in approval or configuration) and the advisory is provided for publication (manual or time-based)
  - \* “Update Advisory”: open an existing advisory, create new revision & change content, request a review, provide review comments or approve it, resolve review comments; if the review approved it, the approval for publication can be requested; if granted the document status changes to *final* (or *interim* based on the selection in approval or configuration) and the advisory is provided for publication (manual or time-based)
- offers both: publication immediately or at a given date/time.
- automates handling of date/time and version.
- provides an API to retrieve all CSAF documents which are currently in the status published.
- optionally provides an API to import or create new advisories from outside systems (e.g. bug tracker, CVD platform,...).
- provides a user management and support at least the following roles:
  - *Registered*: Able to see all published CSAF documents (but only in the published version).
  - *Author*: inherits *Registered* permissions and also can Create and Edit Own (mostly used for automated creation, see above)
  - *Editor*: inherits *Author* permissions and can Edit (mostly used in PSIRT)
  - *Publisher*: inherits *Editor* permissions and can Change state and Review any (mostly used as HEAD of PSIRT or team lead)
  - *Reviewer*: inherits *Registered* permissions and can Review advisories assigned to him (might be a subject matter expert or management)
  - *Manager*: inherits *Publisher* permissions and can Delete; User management up to *Publisher*
  - *Administrator*: inherits *Manager* permissions and can Change the configuration
- may use groups to support client separation (multitenancy) and therefore restrict the roles to actions within their group. In this case, there MUST be a *Group configurator* which is able to change the values which are used to prefill fields in new advisories for that group. He might also do the user management for the group up to a configured level.
- prefills the following fields in new CSAF documents with the values given below or based on the templates from configuration:
  - `/ $schema` with the value prescribed by the schema
  - `/document/csaf_version` with the value prescribed by the schema
  - `/document/lang`
  - `/document/notes`
  - \* `legal_disclaimer` (Terms of use from the configuration)

- \* `general` (General Security recommendations from the configuration)
  - `/document/tracking/current_release_date` with the current date
  - `/document/tracking/generator` and children
  - `/document/tracking/initial_release_date` with the current date
  - `/document/tracking/revision_history`
    - \* `date` with the current date
    - \* `number` (based on the templates according to the versioning scheme configured)
    - \* `summary` (based on the templates from configuration; default: "Initial version.")
  - `/document/tracking/status` with `draft`
  - `/document/tracking/version` with the value of `number` the latest `/document/tracking/revision_history[]` element
  - `/document/publisher` and children
  - `/document/category` (based on the templates from configuration)
- When updating an existing CSAF document:
  - prefills all fields which have be present in the existing CSAF document
  - adds a new item in `/document/tracking/revision_history[]`
  - updates the following fields with the values given below or based on the templates from configuration:
    - \* `/$schema` with the value prescribed by the schema
    - \* `/document/csaf_version` with the value prescribed by the schema
    - \* `/document/lang`
    - \* `/document/notes`
      - `legal_disclaimer` (Terms of use from the configuration)
      - `general` (General Security recommendations from the configuration)
    - \* `/document/tracking/current_release_date` with the current date
    - \* `/document/tracking/generator` and children
    - \* the new item in `/document/tracking/revision_history[]`
      - `date` with the current date
      - `number` (based on the templates according to the versioning scheme configured)
    - \* `/document/tracking/status` with `draft`
    - \* `/document/tracking/version` with the value of `number` the latest `/document/tracking/revision_history[]` element
    - \* `/document/publisher` and children

### 9.1.7 Conformance Clause 7: CSAF post-processor

A CSAF post-processor satisfies the "CSAF post-processor" conformance profile if the post-processor:

- satisfies the "CSAF consumer" conformance profile.
- satisfies the "CSAF producer" conformance profile.
- additionally satisfies those normative requirements in section 3 that are designated as applying to post-processors.

### 9.1.8 Conformance Clause 8: CSAF modifier

A program satisfies the "CSAF modifier" conformance profile if the program fulfills the two following groups of requirements:

The program:

- satisfies the "CSAF post-processor" conformance profile.
- adds, deletes or modifies at least one property, array, object or value of a property or item of an array.



- does not emit any objects, properties, or values which, according to section 9, are intended to be produced only by CSAF translators.
- satisfies the normative requirements given below.

The resulting modified document:

- does not have the same `/document/tracking/id` as the original document. The modified document can use a completely new `/document/tracking/id` or compute one by appending the original `/document/tracking/id` as a suffix after an ID from the naming scheme of the issuer of the modified version. It SHOULD NOT use the original `/document/tracking/id` as a prefix.
- includes a reference to the original advisory as first element of the array `/document/references[]`.

#### 9.1.9 Conformance Clause 9: CSAF translator

A program satisfies the “CSAF translator” conformance profile if the program fulfills the two following groups of requirements:

The program:

- satisfies the “CSAF post-processor” conformance profile.
- translates at least one value.
- preserves the same semantics and form across translations.
- satisfies the normative requirements given below and does not add or remove other elements than required below.

The resulting translated document:

- does not use the same `/document/tracking/id` as the original document. The translated document can use a completely new `/document/tracking/id` or compute one by using the original `/document/tracking/id` as a prefix and adding an ID from the naming scheme of the issuer of the translated version. It SHOULD NOT use the original `/document/tracking/id` as a suffix. If an issuer uses a CSAF translator to publish his advisories in multiple languages they MAY use the combination of the original `/document/tracking/id` and translated `/document/lang` as a `/document/tracking/id` for the translated document. > Note that the term “publish” is used in this conformance profile independent of whether the specified target group is the public or a closed group.
- provides the `/document/lang` property with a value matching the language of the translation.
- provides the `/document/source_lang` to contain the language of the original document (and SHOULD only be set by CSAF translators).
- has the value `translator` set in `/document/publisher/category`
- includes a reference to the original advisory as first element of the array `/document/references[]`.
- MAY contain translations for elements in arrays of `references_t` after the first element. However, it MUST keep the original URLs as references at the end.

#### 9.1.10 Conformance Clause 10: CSAF consumer

A processor satisfies the “CSAF consumer” conformance profile if the processor:

- reads CSAF documents and interprets them according to the semantics defined in section 3 and 5.
- satisfies those normative requirements in section 3, 5 and 8 that are designated as applying to CSAF consumers.



### 9.1.11 Conformance Clause 11: CSAF viewer

A viewer satisfies the “CSAF viewer” conformance profile if the viewer fulfills the two following groups of requirements:

The viewer:

- satisfies the “CSAF consumer” conformance profile.
- satisfies the normative requirements given below.

For each CVSS-Score in `/vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]` the viewer:

- preferably shows the `vector` if there is an inconsistency between the `vector` and any other sibling attribute.
- SHOULD prefer the item of `metrics[]` for each `product_id` which originates from the document author (and therefore has no property `source`) and has the highest CVSS Base Score and newest CVSS version (in that order) if a `product_id` is listed in more than one item of `metrics[]`.

### 9.1.12 Conformance Clause 12: CSAF management system

A CSAF management system satisfies the “CSAF management system” conformance profile if the management system:

- satisfies the “CSAF viewer” conformance profile.
- provides at least the following management functions:
  - add new CSAF documents (e.g. from file system or URL) to the system
  - list all CSAF documents within the system
  - delete CSAF documents from the system
  - comment on CSAF documents in the system
  - mark CSAF documents as read in the system
  - search for CSAF documents by values of required fields at document-level or their children within the system
  - search for CSAF documents by values of `cve` within the system
  - search for CSAF documents based on properties of `/product_tree`
  - filter on all properties which it is required to search for
  - sort on all properties which it is required to search for
  - sort on CVSS scores and `/document/aggregate_severity/text`
- identifies the latest version of CSAF documents with the same `/document/tracking/id`.
- is able to show the difference between 2 versions of a CSAF document with the same `/document/tracking/id`.

### 9.1.13 Conformance Clause 13: CSAF asset matching system

A CSAF asset matching system satisfies the “CSAF asset matching system” conformance profile if the asset matching system:

- satisfies the “CSAF management system” conformance profile.
- is an asset database or connects to one.
- matches the CSAF documents within the system to the respective assets. This might be done with a probability which gives the end user the chance to broaden or narrow the results. The process of matching is also referred to as “run of the asset matching module”.
- provides for each product of the asset database a list of matched advisories.
- provides for each asset of the asset database a list of matched advisories.
- provides for each CSAF document a list of matched product of the asset database.
- provides for each CSAF document a list of matched asset of the asset database.
- provides for each vulnerability within a CSAF document the option to mark a matched asset in the asset database as “not remediated”, “remediation in progress”, or “remediation done”. A switch to mark all assets at once MAY be implemented.

- does not bring up a newer revision of a CSAF document as a new match if the remediation for the matched product or asset has not changed.
- detects the usage semantic version (as described in section 3.1.11.2).
- is able to trigger a run of the asset matching module:
  - manually:
    - \* per CSAF document
    - \* per list of CSAF documents
    - \* per asset
    - \* per list of assets
  - automatically:
    - \* when a new CSAF document is inserted (for this CSAF document)
    - \* when a new asset is inserted (for this asset)
    - \* when the Major version in a CSAF document with semantic versioning changes (for this CSAF document)
      - > These also apply if more than one CSAF document or asset was added.
      - > To reduce the computational efforts the runs can be pooled into one run which fulfills all the tasks at once (batch mode).
  - Manually and automatically triggered runs SHOULD NOT be pooled.
- provides at least the following statistics for the count of assets:
  - matching that CSAF document at all
  - marked with a given status

#### 9.1.14 Conformance Clause 14: CSAF basic validator

A program satisfies the “CSAF basic validator” conformance profile if the program:

- reads documents and performs a check against the JSON schema.
- performs all tests of the preset **mandatory** as given in section 6.4.1.
- does not change the CSAF documents.
- satisfies those normative requirements in section 6.4 that are designated as applying to CSAF validators.

A CSAF basic validator MAY provide one or more additional functions:

- Only run one or more selected mandatory tests.
- Apply quick fixes as specified in the standard.
- Apply additional quick fixes as implemented by the vendor.

#### 9.1.15 Conformance Clause 15: CSAF extended validator

A CSAF basic validator satisfies the “CSAF extended validator” conformance profile if the CSAF basic validator:

- satisfies the “CSAF basic validator” conformance profile.
- additionally performs all tests of the preset **recommended** as given in section 6.4.1.

A CSAF extended validator MAY provide an additional function to only run one or more selected recommended tests.

#### 9.1.16 Conformance Clause 16: CSAF full validator

A CSAF extended validator satisfies the “CSAF full validator” conformance profile if the CSAF extended validator:

- satisfies the “CSAF extended validator” conformance profile.
- additionally performs all tests of the preset **informative** as given in section 6.4.1.
- provides an option to additionally use a custom dictionary for test 6.3.8.

A CSAF full validator MAY provide an additional function to only run one or more selected informative tests.

### 9.1.17 Conformance Clause 17: CSAF SBOM matching system

A CSAF SBOM matching system satisfies the “CSAF SBOM matching system” conformance profile if the SBOM matching system:

- satisfies the “CSAF management system” conformance profile.
- is an SBOM database or connects to one. > A repository or any other location that can be queried for SBOMs and their content is also considered an SBOM database.
- matches the CSAF documents within the system to the respective SBOM components. This might be done with a probability which gives the user the chance to broaden or narrow the results. The process of matching is also referred to as “run of the SBOM matching module”.
- provides for each SBOM of the SBOM database a list of matched advisories.
- provides for each SBOM component of the SBOM database a list of matched advisories.
- provides for each CSAF document a list of matched SBOMs of the SBOM database.
- provides for each CSAF document a list of matched SBOM components of the SBOM database.
- provides for each vulnerability within a CSAF document the option to mark a matched SBOM component in the SBOM database as “not remediated”, “remediation in progress”, or “remediation done”. A switch to mark all SBOM component at once MAY be implemented.
- does not bring up a newer revision of a CSAF document as a new match if the remediation for the matched SBOM or SBOM component has not changed.
- detects the usage semantic version (as described in section 3.1.11.2).
- is able to trigger a run of the SBOM matching module:
  - manually:
    - \* per CSAF document
    - \* per list of CSAF documents
    - \* per SBOM component
    - \* per list of SBOM components
  - automatically:
    - \* when a new CSAF document is inserted (for this CSAF document)
    - \* when a new SBOM component is inserted (for this SBOM component)
    - \* when the Major version in a CSAF document with semantic versioning changes (for this CSAF document)
      - > These also apply if more than one CSAF document or SBOM component was added. > To reduce the computational efforts the runs can be pooled into one run which fulfills all the tasks at once (batch mode).
      - > Manually and automatically triggered runs should not be pooled.
- provides at least the following statistics for the count of SBOM component:
  - matching that CSAF document at all
  - marked with a given status

### 9.1.18 Conformance Clause 18: CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter

A program satisfies the “CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter” conformance profile if the program fulfills the following two groups of requirements:

Firstly, the program:

- satisfies the “CSAF producer” conformance profile.
- takes only CSAF 2.0 documents as input.
- outputs a warning that an additional property was detected and not converted if it detects an additional property in the input. The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL ignore that additional property during the conversion.
- additionally satisfies the normative requirements given below.

Secondly, the program fulfills the following for all items of:

- value type `string` with format `date-time`: If the value contains a 60 in the seconds place, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST replace the seconds and their fractions with 59.999999. In addition, the converter outputs a warning that leap seconds are now prohibited in CSAF and the value has been replaced. The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD indicate in such warning message whether the value was a valid leap second or not.
- type `/$defs/full_product_name_t/product_identification_helper/cpe`: If a CPE is invalid, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD removed the invalid value and output a warning that an invalid CPE was detected and removed. Such a warning MUST include the invalid CPE.
- type `/$defs/full_product_name_t/model_number`:
  - If a model number is given that does not end on a star, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD add a `*` to the end and output a warning that a partial model number was detected and a star has been added. Such a warning MUST include the model number.
  - If the model number contains a `\`, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST escape it by inserting an additional `\` before the character.
  - If the model number contains multiple unescaped `*` after the conversion, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST remove the entry and output a warning that a model number with multiple stars was detected and removed. Such a warning MUST include the model number.

A tool MAY provide a non-default option to interpret all model numbers as complete and therefore does not add any stars.

A tool MAY provide a non-default option to interpret the `?` in all model numbers as part of the model number itself and therefore escape it.

A tool MAY provide a non-default option to interpret the `*` in all model numbers as part of the model number itself and therefore escape it.

- type `/$defs/full_product_name_t/product_identification_helper/purls`: If a `/$defs/full_product_name_t/product_identification_helper/purls` is given, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST convert it into the first item of the corresponding `purls` array.
- type `/$defs/full_product_name_t/serial_number`:
  - If a serial number is given that does not end on a star, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD add a `*` to the end and output a warning that a partial serial number was detected and a star has been added. Such a warning MUST include the serial number.
  - If the serial number contains a `\`, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST escape it by inserting an additional `\` before the character.
  - If the serial number contains multiple unescaped `*` after the conversion, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST remove the entry and output a warning that a serial number with multiple stars was detected and removed. Such a warning MUST include the serial number.

A tool MAY provide a non-default option to interpret all serial numbers as complete and therefore does not add any stars.

A tool MAY provide a non-default option to interpret the `?` in all serial numbers as part of the serial number itself and therefore escape it.

A tool MAY provide a non-default option to interpret the `*` in all serial numbers as part of the serial number itself and therefore escape it.

- `/$schema`: The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST set property with the value prescribed by the schema.
- `/document/category`:

- If the `category` equals `csaf_security_advisory`, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST try to convert the data into a valid CSAF document in this profile according to CSAF 2.1. For any version range of affected products that uses the strict `<`, i.e. not `<=`, as comparator of the last version constraint, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD add a new product with the version of the last constraint and add that in the appropriate places as `fixed`. The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST output a warning that a product was added to the `product_tree` and the corresponding `/vulnerabilities[]`. Such warning MUST contain the full product name and its path as well as the paths of the `/vulnerabilities[]` it was added to. If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter is unable to create a valid CSAF 2.1 document according to the profile, it SHALL set the `category` value to `csaf_deprecated_security_advisory`.
- If the `/document/lang` is English or unspecified, the following rules apply:
  - \* If the `/document/title` starts with the string `Superseded` or the `/document/category` has the value `Superseded` (case-insensitive), the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST try to convert all data into a valid CSAF document in the profile “Superseded” according to CSAF 2.1.
  - \* If the `/document/title` starts with the string `Withdrawn` or the `/document/category` has the value `Withdrawn` (case-insensitive), the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST try to convert all data into a valid CSAF document in the profile “Withdrawn” according to CSAF 2.1. > A tool MAY provide a non-default option to remove or transform certain or all elements the hinder the creation of a valid CSAF document according > to the profile.

A tool MAY support this detection for other languages.

If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter is unable to create a valid CSAF 2.1 document according to the profile, it SHALL set the `category` of the original CSAF document and output a warning a potentially withdrawn CSAF document was created which would result in an invalid CSAF.

- `/document/csaf_version`: The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST update the value to `2.1`.
- `/document/distribution/tlp/label`: If a TLP label is given, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST convert it according to the table below:

CSAF 2.0 (using TLP v1.0)	CSAF 2.1 (using TLP v2.0)
TLP:WHITE	TLP:CLEAR
TLP:GREEN	TLP:GREEN
TLP:AMBER	TLP:AMBER
TLP:RED	TLP:RED

If `/document/distribution/text` contains the string `TLP v2.0: TLP:<ValidTLPLabel>`, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD provide an option to use this label instead. If the TLP label changes through such conversion in a way that is not reflected in the table above, the the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST output a warning that the TLP label was taken from the distribution text. Such a warning MUST include both values: the converted one based on the table and the one from the distribution text. > This is a common case for CSAF 2.0 documents labeled as `TLP:RED` but actually intended to be `TLP:AMBER+STRICT`.

If no TLP label was given, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD assign `TLP:CLEAR` and output a warning that the default TLP has been set.

- `/document/license_expression`: If any `/document/notes` item in with `category legal_disclaimer` contains a valid SPDX license expression, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL convert this value into `license_expression`. In addition, the converter outputs an information that license expression was found and set as document license expression.
- `/document/notes`: If any `/document/notes` item contains one of the `category` and `title` combinations specified in 3.2.2.8, where the `title` is extended, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL try to identify whether that extension is a specific product name, version or family. In such case, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 SHALL try to

add the corresponding products to the note item and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and products have been assigned to it. Such warning MUST also include the note and the assigned products. If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 is unable to create a valid object, it MUST remove the reference to the products and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and no products could be assigned to it.

- `/document/publisher/category`: If the value is `other`, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHOULD output a warning that some parties have been regrouped into the new value `multiplier`. An option to suppress this warning MUST exist. In addition, an option SHOULD be provided to set the value to `multiplier`.
- `/document/title`: If the value contains the `/document/tracking/id`, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST remove the `/document/tracking/id` from the `/document/title`. In addition, separating characters including but not limited to whitespace, colon, dash and brackets MUST be removed.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/cwes[]`:
  - The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST remove all preceding and trailing white space from the `name`.
  - The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST determine the CWE specification version the given CWE was selected from by using the latest version that matches the `id` and `name` exactly and was published prior to the value of `/document/tracking/current_release_date` of the source document. If no such version exist, the first matching version published after the value of `/document/tracking/current_release_date` of the source document SHOULD be used. > This is done to create a deterministic conversion.

The tool SHOULD implement an option to use the latest available CWE version at the time of the conversion that still matches.

- `/vulnerabilities[]/disclosure_date`: If a `release_date` was given, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST convert its value as value into the `disclosure_date` element.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/metrics/cvss_v4`: If an external reference in the vulnerability linking to the official FIRST.org CVSS v4.0 calculator exists, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST convert the vector given in the fragment into a `cvss_v4` object linked to all affected products of the vulnerability. > A tool MAY implement an option to suppress this conversion. If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter is unable to construct a valid object with the information given, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL remove the invalid `cvss_v4` object and output a warning that the automatic conversion of the CVSS v4.0 reference failed. Such warning SHOULD include the specific error that occurred.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/metrics/ssvc_v1`: If a Ssvc vector or decision points of an Ssvc vector are given in an item of `notes` of the current vulnerability using the `title` Ssvc and the `category` `other`, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST convert that data into the `ssvc_v1` object within the current vulnerability. If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter is able to construct a valid object without losing any information, the corresponding `notes` item SHALL be removed. If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter is unable to construct a valid object with the information given, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL remove the invalid `ssvc_v1` object, keep the original item of `notes` and output a warning that the automatic conversion of the Ssvc data failed. If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter would lose information during the conversion, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL remove the `ssvc_v1` object, keep the original item of `notes` and output a warning that the automatic conversion of the Ssvc data would lead to losing information.
- `/vulnerabilities[]/notes`: If any `/vulnerabilities[]/notes` item contains one of the `category` and `title` combinations specified in 3.2.4.11, where the `title` is extended, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL try to identify whether that extension is a specific product name, version or family. In such case, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL try to add the corresponding products to the note item and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and products have been assigned to it. Such warning MUST also include the note and the assigned products. If the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter is unable to create a valid object, it MUST remove the reference to the products and output a warning that a potential product specific note has been discovered and no products could be assigned to it.

- `/vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]`:
  - The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST convert any remediation with the category `vendor_fix` into the category `optional_patch` if the product in question is in one of the product status groups “Not Affected” or “Fixed” for this vulnerability. Otherwise, the category `vendor_fix` MUST stay the same. If multiple products are associated with the remediation - either directly or through a product group - and the products belong to different product status groups, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST duplicate the remediation, change the category in one instance to `optional_patch` and distribute the products accordingly as stated by the conversion rule.
  - The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST convert any remediation with the category `none_available` into the category `fix_planned` if the product in question is also listed in a remediation of the category `vendor_fix` with a `date` in the future or no `date` at all. Consequently, the product MUST be removed from the remediation of the category `vendor_fix`. If it was the last product in that remediation, the remediation MUST be removed.
  - The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST remove any product from a remediation with the category `none_available` if the product in question is also listed in a remediation of the category `vendor_fix` with a `date` in the past or to the exact same time. If it was the last product in that remediation, the remediation MUST be removed.
  - In any other case, the CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST preserve the product in the remediation of the category `none_available`.
  - The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter MUST output a warning if a remediation was added, deleted or the value of the category was changed, including the products it was changed for.
- The CSAF 2.0 to CSAF 2.1 converter SHALL provide the JSON path where the warning occurred together with the warning.

A tool MAY implement options to convert other Markdown formats to GitHub-flavored Markdown.

A tool MAY implement an additional, non-default option to output an invalid document that can be fixed afterwards. Solely in this case, any of the rules above MAY be ignored to avoid data loss.

### 9.1.19 Conformance Clause 19: CSAF library

A library satisfies the “CSAF library” conformance profile if the library:

- implements all elements as data structures conforming to the syntax and semantics defined in section 2.3, 3, 4 and 5.
- checks all elements according to the patterns provided in the JSON schema.
- has a function that checks version ranges.
- has a function that helps to create version ranges.
- provides for each element functions that allow to create, add, modify and delete that element.
- has a function that reads a CSAF document into the data structure from a
  - file system.
  - URL.
  - data stream.
- provides function for sorting the keys and sorts the keys automatically on output.
- has a function that outputs the data structure as CSAF document
  - on the file system.
  - as string.
  - into a data stream.
- has a function to determine the filename according to 5.1 and sets the filename per default when saving a CSAF document.



- generates a new `product_id` for each new element of type `full_product_name_t` unless an ID is given during the creation.
- generates a new `group_id` for each new element of type `product_group_id_t` unless an ID is given during the creation.
- provides a function to retrieve all elements of type `product_id_t` with its corresponding `full_product_name_t/name` and `full_product_name_t/product_identification_helper`.
- provides a function to retrieve all `product_identification_helper` and their mapping to elements of type `product_id_t`.
- provides a function to retrieve a VEX status mapping for all data, which includes the combination of vulnerability, product, product status and, where necessary according to the profile, the impact statement respectively the action statement.
- provides a function to generate a `full_product_name_t/name` with in branches through concatenating the name values separated by whitespace of the elements along the path towards this leaf.
- calculates the CVSS scores and severities for existing data for all CVSS versions.
- validates the CVSS scores and severities for existing data for all CVSS versions.

The library MAY implement an option to retrieve the keys unsorted.

### 9.1.20 Conformance Clause 20: CSAF library with basic validation

A CSAF library satisfies the “CSAF library with basic validation” conformance profile if the CSAF library:

- satisfies the “CSAF library” conformance profile.
- satisfies the “CSAF basic validator” conformance profile.
- validates the CSAF document before output according to the “CSAF basic validator” and presents the validation result accordingly.
- provide a function to validate the data structure in its current state according to the “CSAF basic validator” and presents the validation result accordingly.

A CSAF library does not satisfies the “CSAF library with basic validation” conformance profile if the CSAF library uses an external library or program for the “CSAF basic validator” part and does not enforce its presence.

### 9.1.21 Conformance Clause 21: CSAF library with extended validation

A CSAF library satisfies the “CSAF library with extended validation” conformance profile if the CSAF library:

- satisfies the “CSAF library” conformance profile.
- satisfies the “CSAF extended validator” conformance profile.
- validates the CSAF document before output according to the “CSAF extended validator” and presents the validation result accordingly.
- provide a function to validate the data structure in its current state according to the “CSAF extended validator” and presents the validation result accordingly.

A CSAF library does not satisfies the “CSAF library with extended validation” conformance profile if the CSAF library uses an external library or program for the “CSAF extended validator” part and does not enforce its presence.

### 9.1.22 Conformance Clause 22: CSAF library with full validation

A CSAF library satisfies the “CSAF library with extended validation” conformance profile if the CSAF library:

- satisfies the “CSAF library” conformance profile.
- satisfies the “CSAF full validator” conformance profile.
- validates the CSAF document before output according to the “CSAF full validator” and presents the validation result accordingly.



- provide a function to validate the data structure in its current state according to the “CSAF full validator” and presents the validation result accordingly.

A CSAF library does not satisfies the “CSAF library with full validation” conformance profile if the CSAF library uses an external library or program for the “CSAF full validator” part and does not enforce its presence.

#### 9.1.23 Conformance Clause 23: CSAF downloader

A program satisfies the “CSAF downloader” conformance profile if the program:

- conforms to the process defined in section 7.3 by executing all parts that are applicable to the given role.
- supports directory-based and ROLIE-based retrieval.
- is able to execute both steps from section 7.3 separately.
- uses a program-specific HTTP User Agent, e.g. consisting of the name and version of the program.
- satisfies those normative requirements in section 7 that are designated as applying to CSAF downloaders.

A tool MAY implement an option to store CSAF documents that fail any of the steps in section 7.3.2.

#### 9.1.24 Conformance Clause 24: CSAF withdrawer

A program satisfies the “CSAF withdrawer” conformance profile if the program:

- satisfies the “CSAF post-processor” conformance profile.
- keeps the original `/document/tracking/id`.
- adds a new item to the revision history stating the revision metadata of the withdrawal.
- adds the reasoning for withdrawal as specified in section sec.
- removes the `/product_tree`.
- removes the `/vulnerabilities`.

A tool MAY implement an option to additionally remove any element that would hinder the production of a valid CSAF.

#### 9.1.25 Conformance Clause 25: CSAF superseder

A program satisfies the “CSAF superseder” conformance profile if the program:

- satisfies the “CSAF post-processor” conformance profile.
- keeps the original `/document/tracking/id`.
- adds a new item to the revision history stating the revision metadata of the supersession.
- adds the reasoning for supersession as specified in section sec.
- adds the reference to the superseding document as specified in section sec.
- removes the `/product_tree`.
- removes the `/vulnerabilities`.

A tool MAY implement an option to additionally remove any element that would hinder the production of a valid CSAF.

## Appendix A. Acknowledgments

The following individuals were members of the OASIS CSAF Technical Committee during the creation of this specification and their contributions are gratefully acknowledged:

### CSAF TC Members:

First Name	Last Name	Company
Alexandre	Dulaunoy	CIRCL
Anthony	Berglas	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Art	Manion	Carnegie Mellon University
Aukjan	van Belkum	EclecticIQ
Ben	Sooter	Electric Power Research Institute (EPRI)
Bernd	Grobauer	Siemens AG
Bruce	Rich	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Chok	Poh	Oracle
Dan	West	Microsoft
David	Waltermire	NIST
Denny	Page	TIBCO Software Inc.
Duncan	Sparrell	sFractal Consulting LLC
Eric	Johnson	TIBCO Software Inc.
Ethan	Rahn	Arista Networks
Feng	Cao	Oracle
Greg	Scott	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Harold	Booth	NIST
Jason	Masters	TELUS
Jennifer	Victor	Dell
Jessica	Fitzgerald-McKay	National Security Agency
Jonathan	Bitle	Kaiser Permanente
Justin	Corlett	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Kazuo	Noguchi	Hitachi, Ltd.
Kent	Landfield	McAfee
Langley	Rock	Red Hat
Martin	Prpic	Red Hat
Masato	Terada	Hitachi, Ltd.
Mike	Gorski	Cisco Systems
Nicole	Parrish	Mitre Corporation
Omar	Santos	Cisco Systems
Patrick	Maroney	AT&T
Rhonda	Levy	Cisco Systems
Richard	Struse	Mitre Corporation
Ritwik	Ghoshal	Oracle
Robert	Coderre	Accenture
Robert	Keith	Accenture
Stefan	Hagen	Individual
Tania	Ward	Dell
Ted	Bedwell	Cisco Systems
Thomas	Proell	Siemens AG
Thomas	Schmidt	Federal Office for Information Security (BSI) Germany
Tim	Hudson	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Tobias	Limmer	Siemens AG
Tony	Cox	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.

First Name	Last Name	Company
Vincent	Danen	Red Hat
Will	Rideout	Arista Networks
Xiaoyu	Ge	Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd.

The following individuals were members of the OASIS CSAF Technical Committee during the creation of the previous version (CVRF v1.2) of this specification and their contributions are gratefully acknowledged:

#### CSAF TC Members:

First Name	Last Name	Company
Adam	Montville	CIS
Allan	Thomson	LookingGlass
Anthony	Berglas	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Art	Manion	Carnegie Mellon University
Aukjan	van Belkum	EclecticIQ
Ben	Sooter	Electric Power Research Institute
Bernd	Grobauer	Siemens AG
Beth	Pumo	Kaiser Permanente
Bret	Jordan	Symantec Corp.
Bruce	Rich	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Chet	Ensign	OASIS
Chok	Poh	Oracle
Chris	Rouland	Individual
David	Waltermire	NIST
Denny	Page	TIBCO Software Inc.
Doron	Shiloach	IBM
Duncan	Sparrell	sFractal Consulting LLC
Eric	Johnson	TIBCO Software Inc.
Feng	Cao	Oracle
Greg	Reaume	TELUS
Greg	Scott	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Harold	Booth	NIST
Jamison	Day	LookingGlass
Jared	Semrau	“FireEye, Inc.”
Jason	Masters	TELUS
Jerome	Athias	Individual
Jessica	Fitzgerald-McKay	National Security Agency
Jonathan	Bitle	Kaiser Permanente
Justin	Corlett	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Karen	Scarfone	Individual
Kazuo	Noguchi	“Hitachi, Ltd.”
Kent	Landfield	McAfee
Lothar	Braun	Siemens AG
Louis	Ronnau	Cisco Systems
Mark	Davidson	NC4
Mark-David	McLaughlin	Cisco Systems
Masato	Terada	“Hitachi, Ltd.”
Masood	Nasir	TELUS
Nicole	Gong	Mitre Corporation
Omar	Santos	Cisco Systems

## Standards Track Work Product

First Name	Last Name	Company
Patrick	Maroney	Wapack Labs LLC
Paul	Patrick	“FireEye, Inc.”
Peter	Allor	IBM
Phillip	Boles	“FireEye, Inc.”
Ravi	Balupari	Netskope
Rich	Reybok	ServiceNow
Richard	Struse	DHS Office of Cybersecurity and Communications (CS&C)
Ritwik	Ghoshal	Oracle
Robert	Coderre	VeriSign
Robin	Cover	OASIS
Rupert	Wimmer	Siemens AG
Sanjiv	Kalkar	Individual
Sean	Barnum	Mitre Corporation
Stefan	Hagen	Individual
Ted	Bedwell	Cisco Systems
Thomas	Schreck	Siemens AG
Tim	Hudson	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Tony	Cox	Cryptsoft Pty Ltd.
Trey	Darley	“Kingfisher Operations, sprl”
Vincent	Danen	Red Hat
Zach	Turk	Microsoft

## Appendix B. Revision History

Revision	Date	Editor	Changes Made
csaf-v2.1-wd20240124-dev	2024-01-24	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Preparing initial Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20240228-dev	2024-02-28	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20240327-dev	2024-03-27	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20240424-dev	2024-04-24	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20240529-dev	2024-05-29	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20240626-dev	2024-06-26	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20240731-dev	2024-07-31	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20240828-dev	2024-08-28	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20241030-dev	2024-10-30	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20241127-dev	2024-11-27	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20250129-dev	2025-01-29	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20250226-dev	2025-02-26	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20250326-dev	2025-03-26	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20250430-dev	2025-04-30	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision
csaf-v2.1-wd20250528-dev	2025-05-28	Stefan Hagen and Thomas Schmidt	Next Editor Revision

## Appendix C. Guidance on the Size of CSAF Documents

This appendix provides informative guidance on the size of CSAF documents.

The TC carefully considered all known aspects to provide size limits for CSAF documents for this version of the specification with the result that hard limits SHOULD NOT be enforced. However, since there is the need for guidance to ensure interoperability in the ecosystem, the TC provides a set of soft limits. A CSAF document which exceeds those, can still be valid but it might not be processable for some parties.

All *CSAF consumers* SHOULD be able to process CSAF documents which comply with the limits below. All *CSAF producers* SHOULD NOT produce CSAF documents which exceed those limits.

If you come across a case where these limits are exceeded, please provide feedback to the TC.

### C.1 File Size

A CSAF document in the specified JSON format encoded in UTF-8 SHOULD conform to known size limits of current technologies parsing JSON content, e.g.: 50 MiB.

The CSAF documents observed in the wild expose strongly varying sizes as per the use cases they serve. At least one database technology in wide use for storing CSAF documents rejects insert attempts when the transformed BSON size exceeds 16 megabytes. The BSON format optimizes for accessibility and not size. So, small integers and small strings may incur more overhead in the BSON format than in JSON. In addition, the BSON format adds length information for the entries inside the document, which adds to the size when storing CSAF document content in a BSON format.

### C.2 Array Length

An array SHOULD NOT have more than:

- 10 000 items for

- /document/acknowledgments
- /document/acknowledgments[]/names
- /document/acknowledgments[]/urls
- /document/tracking/aliases
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/ha
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/ha
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/pu
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/sb
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/x\_
- /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/hashtes
- /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/hashtes[]/file\_ha
- /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/purls
- /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/sbom\_urls
- /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/hashtes
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/hashtes[]/file\_
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/purls
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/sbom\_urls
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris
- /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/h
- /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/h
- /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/p
- /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/s

- /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/x
  - /vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments
  - /vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/names
  - /vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/urls
  - /vulnerabilities[]/cwes
  - /vulnerabilities[]/ids
  - /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc\_v1/selections
  - /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc\_v1/selections[]/values
  - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/entitlements
- 40 000 items for
    - /document/notes
    - /document/references
    - /vulnerabilities[]/involvements
    - /vulnerabilities[]/notes
    - /vulnerabilities[]/references
- 100 000 for
    - /document/tracking/revision\_history
    - /product\_tree/branches
    - /product\_tree(/branches[])\* /branches
    - /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/mo
    - /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/se
    - /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/sk
    - /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/model\_numbers
    - /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/serial\_numbers
    - /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/skus
    - /product\_tree/full\_product\_names
    - /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/model\_numbers
    - /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/serial\_numbers
    - /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/skus
    - /product\_tree/product\_groups[]/product\_ids
    - /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/m
    - /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/s
    - /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/s
    - /vulnerabilities
- 10 000 000 for
    - /product\_tree/product\_groups
    - /product\_tree/relationships
    - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/group\_ids
- 100 000 000 for
    - /document/notes[]/group\_ids
    - /document/notes[]/product\_ids
    - /vulnerabilities[]/first\_known\_exploitation\_dates
    - /vulnerabilities[]/first\_known\_exploitation\_dates[]/group\_ids
    - /vulnerabilities[]/first\_known\_exploitation\_dates[]/product\_ids
    - /vulnerabilities[]/flags
    - /vulnerabilities[]/flags[]/group\_ids
    - /vulnerabilities[]/flags[]/product\_ids
    - /vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/group\_ids
    - /vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/product\_ids

- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/products
- /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/group\_ids
- /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/product\_ids
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/first\_affected
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/first\_fixed
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/fixed
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_affected
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_not\_affected
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/last\_affected
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/recommended
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/under\_investigation
- /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/unknown
- /vulnerabilities[]/remediations
- /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/product\_ids
- /vulnerabilities[]/threats
- /vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/group\_ids
- /vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/product\_ids

### C.3 String Length

A string SHOULD NOT have a length greater than:

- 1000 for

- /document/acknowledgments[]/names[]
- /document/acknowledgments[]/organization
- /document/aggregate\_severity/text
- /document/category
- /document/distribution/sharing\_group/name
- /document/lang
- /document/license\_expression
- /document/notes[]/audience
- /document/notes[]/group\_ids[]
- /document/notes[]/product\_ids[]
- /document/notes[]/title
- /document/publisher/name
- /document/source\_lang
- /document/title
- /document/tracking/aliases[]
- /document/tracking/generator/engine/name
- /document/tracking/generator/engine/version
- /document/tracking/id
- /document/tracking/revision\_history[]/legacy\_version
- /document/tracking/revision\_history[]/number
- /document/tracking/version
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*name
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/name
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_id
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/ha
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/ha
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/ha
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/mo



- /product\_tree/branches[] (/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/se
- /product\_tree/branches[] (/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/sk
- /product\_tree/branches[] /name
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/name
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_id
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/ hashes[] /file\_ha
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/ hashes[] /file\_ha
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/ hashes[] /filenam
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/ model\_numbers[]
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/ serial\_numbers[]
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/ skus[]
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /name
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_id
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/ hashes[] /file\_
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/ hashes[] /file\_
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/ hashes[] /filen
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/ model\_numbers[]
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/ serial\_numbers
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/ skus[]
- /product\_tree/product\_groups[] /group\_id
- /product\_tree/product\_groups[] /product\_ids[]
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/name
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_id
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/h
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/h
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/h
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/m
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/s
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/s
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /product\_reference
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /relates\_to\_product\_reference
- /vulnerabilities[] /acknowledgments[] /names[]
- /vulnerabilities[] /acknowledgments[] /organization
- /vulnerabilities[] /cve
- /vulnerabilities[] /cwes[] /id
- /vulnerabilities[] /cwes[] /name
- /vulnerabilities[] /cwes[] /version
- /vulnerabilities[] /flags[] /group\_ids[]
- /vulnerabilities[] /flags[] /product\_ids[]
- /vulnerabilities[] /ids[] /system\_name
- /vulnerabilities[] /ids[] /text
- /vulnerabilities[] /involvements[] /contact
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/cvss\_v2/vectorString
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/cvss\_v3/vectorString
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/cvss\_v4/vectorString
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/epss/percentile
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/epss/probability
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/ssvc\_v1/id
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/ssvc\_v1/role
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/ssvc\_v1/selections[] /name
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/ssvc\_v1/selections[] /namespace
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/ssvc\_v1/selections[] /values[]
- /vulnerabilities[] /metrics[] /content/ssvc\_v1/selections[] /version

- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/products[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/audience
  - /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/group\_ids[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/product\_ids[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/title
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/first\_affected[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/first\_fixed[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/fixed[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_affected[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/known\_not\_affected[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/last\_affected[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/recommended[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/product\_status/under\_investigation[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/group\_ids[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/product\_ids[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/group\_ids[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/product\_ids[]
  - /vulnerabilities[]/title
- 10 000 for
    - /document/acknowledgments[]/summary
    - /document/distribution/text
    - /document/publisher/contact\_details
    - /document/publisher/issuing\_authority
    - /document/references[]/summary
    - /document/tracking/revision\_history[]/summary
    - /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/cpe
    - /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*product/product\_identification\_helper/purls[]
    - /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/cpe
    - /product\_tree/branches[]/product/product\_identification\_helper/purls[]
    - /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/cpe
    - /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[]/product\_identification\_helper/purls[]
    - /product\_tree/product\_groups[]/summary
    - /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/cpe
    - /product\_tree/relationships[]/full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/purls[]
    - /vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/summary
    - /vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/summary
    - /vulnerabilities[]/references[]/summary
    - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/entitlements[]
  - 30 000 for
    - /document/notes[]/text
    - /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/text
  - 250 000 for
    - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/details
    - /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/restart\_required/details
    - /vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/details

## C.4 Date

The maximum length of strings representing a temporal value is given by the format specifier. This applies to:

- /document/tracking/current\_release\_date
- /document/tracking/generator/date
- /document/tracking/initial\_release\_date
- /document/tracking/revision\_history[]/date
- /vulnerabilities[]/disclosure\_date
- /vulnerabilities[]/discovery\_date
- /vulnerabilities[]/first\_known\_exploitation\_dates[]/date
- /vulnerabilities[]/first\_known\_exploitation\_dates[]/exploitation\_date
- /vulnerabilities[]/flags[]/date
- /vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/date
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/epss/timestamp
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc\_v1/timestamp
- /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/date
- /vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/date

## C.5 Enum

A string which is an enum has a fixed maximum length given by its longest value.

Later versions of CSAF might add, modify or delete possible value which could change the longest value. Therefore, this sizes should not be implemented as fixed limits if forward compatibility is desired.

The value of /\$schema is a fixed URL, currently pointing to the JSON schema location. It seems to be safe to assume that the length of this value is not greater than 150. This applies to:

- /\$schema (59)

For all other values, it seems to be safe to assume that the length of each value is not greater than 50. This applies to:

- /document/csaf\_version (3)
- /document/distribution/tlp/label (12)
- /document/notes[]/category (16)
- /document/publisher/category (11)
- /document/references[]/category (8)
- /document/tracking/status (7)
- /product\_tree/branches[](/branches[])\*category (15)
- /product\_tree/branches[]/category (15)
- /product\_tree/relationships[]/category (21)
- /vulnerabilities[]/flags[]/label (49)
- /vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/party (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/involvements[]/status (17)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/accessComplexity (6)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/accessVector (16)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/authentication (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/availabilityImpact (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/availabilityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/collateralDamagePotential (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/confidentialityImpact (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/confidentialityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/exploitability (16)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/integrityImpact (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/integrityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/remediationLevel (13)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/reportConfidence (14)

- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/targetDistribution (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v2/version (3)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/attackComplexity (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/attackVector (16)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/availabilityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/availabilityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/baseSeverity (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/confidentialityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/confidentialityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/environmentalSeverity (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/exploitCodeMaturity (16)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/integrityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/integrityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedAttackComplexity (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedAttackVector (16)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedAvailabilityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedConfidentialityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedIntegrityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedPrivilegesRequired (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedScope (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/modifiedUserInteraction (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/privilegesRequired (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/remediationLevel (13)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/reportConfidence (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/scope (9)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/temporalSeverity (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/userInteraction (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v3/version (3)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/attackComplexity (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/attackRequirements (7)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/attackVector (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/Automatable (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/availabilityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/baseSeverity (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/confidentialityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/environmentalSeverity (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/exploitMaturity (16)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/integrityRequirement (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedAttackComplexity (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedAttackRequirements (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedAttackVector (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedPrivilegesRequired (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedSubAvailabilityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedSubConfidentialityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedSubIntegrityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedUserInteraction (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedVulnAvailabilityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedVulnConfidentialityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/modifiedVulnIntegrityImpact (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/privilegesRequired (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/providerUrgency (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/Recovery (13)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/Safety (11)

- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/subAvailabilityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/subConfidentialityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/subIntegrityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/threatSeverity (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/userInteraction (7)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/valueDensity (12)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/version (3)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/vulnAvailabilityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/vulnConfidentialityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/vulnerabilityResponseEffort (11)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/cvss\_v4/vulnIntegrityImpact (4)
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/content/ssvc\_v1/schemaVersion (5)
- /vulnerabilities[]/notes[]/category (16)
- /vulnerabilities[]/references[]/category (8)
- /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/category (14)
- /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/restart\_required/category (20)
- /vulnerabilities[]/threats[]/category (14)

## C.6 URI Length

A string with format uri SHOULD NOT have a length greater than 20000. This applies to:

- /document/acknowledgments[]/urls[]
- /document/aggregate\_severity/namespace
- /document/distribution/tlp/url
- /document/publisher/namespace
- /document/references[]/url
- /product\_tree/branches[] (/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/sbom\_urls[]
- /product\_tree/branches[] (/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /name
- /product\_tree/branches[] (/branches[])\* /product/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /url
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/sbom\_urls[]
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /name
- /product\_tree/branches[] /product/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /url
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/sbom\_urls[]
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /name
- /product\_tree/full\_product\_names[] /product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /url
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/sbom\_urls[]
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /name
- /product\_tree/relationships[] /full\_product\_name/product\_identification\_helper/x\_generic\_uris[] /url
- /vulnerabilities[]/acknowledgments[]/urls[]
- /vulnerabilities[]/metrics[]/source
- /vulnerabilities[]/references[]/url
- /vulnerabilities[]/remediations[]/url

## C.7 UUID Length

A string with format uuid SHOULD NOT have a length greater than 50. This applies to:

- /document/distribution/sharing\_group/id (36)